

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
1 February 2001 (01.02.2001)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 01/07440 A1**

(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: C07D 487/04,  
C07F 9/40, C07D 519/00, C07F 9/38, A61K 31/41,  
31/415, A61P 29/00 // (C07D 487/04, 233:00) (C07D  
487/04, 233:00, 249:00) (C07D 487/04, 233:00, 257:00)

Main Street, New Canaan, CT 06840 (US). EMEIGH,  
Jonathan, Emilian [US/US]; 6 Kenmere Boulevard, Dan-  
bury, CT 06810 (US). SORCEK, Ronald, J. [US/US]; 8D  
Beach Street, Bethel, CT 06801 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/18884

(74) Agents: RAYMOND, Robert, P. et al.; Boehringer In-  
gelheim Corporation, 900 Ridgebury Road, P.O. Box 368,  
Ridgefield, CT 06877 (US).

(22) International Filing Date: 12 July 2000 (12.07.2000)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:  
60/144,905 21 July 1999 (21.07.1999) US  
60/150,939 26 August 1999 (26.08.1999) US

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,  
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ,  
DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR,  
HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR,  
LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ,  
NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM,  
TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(71) Applicant (*for all designated States except US*):  
BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMACEUTI-  
CALS, INC. [US/US]; 900 Ridgebury Road, P.O. Box  
368, Ridgefield, CT 06877 (US).

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,  
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian  
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European  
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,  
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG,  
CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): WU, Jiang-Ping  
[US/US]; 55 Mill Plain Road, #32-11, Danbury, CT 06811  
(US). KELLY, Terence, Alfred [US/US]; 66 Overlook  
Drive, Ridgefield, CT 06877 (US). LEMIEUX, Rene,  
M. [CA/US]; 1193 Old Turnpike Road, Plantsville, CT  
06479 (US). GOLDBERG, Daniel, R. [US/US]; 284

Published:

— With international search report.

*For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-  
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-  
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.*

(54) Title: IMIDAZOIMIDAZOLES AND TRIAZOLES AS ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AGENTS

(57) Abstract: Compounds of formula (I) which are useful for treating or preventing inflammatory and immune cell-mediated dis-  
eases.

WO 01/07440 A1

## IMIDAZOIMIDAZOLES AND TRIAZOLES AS ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AGENTS

5

Field of the Invention

The present invention relates generally to a series of novel small molecules, their synthesis and their use in the treatment of inflammatory disease.

10 Background of the Invention

Research spanning the last decade has helped to elucidate the molecular events attending cell-cell interactions in the body, especially those events involved in the movement and activation of cells in the immune system. See generally, Springer, T. *Nature*, 1990, 346, 425-434. Cell surface proteins, and especially the Cellular Adhesion Molecules ("CAMs") and "Leukointegrins", including LFA-1, MAC-1 and gp150.95 (referred to in WHO nomenclature as CD18/CD11a, CD18/CD11b, and CD18/CD11c, respectively) have correspondingly been the subject of pharmaceutical research and development having as its goal the intervention in the processes of leukocyte extravasation to sites of injury and leukocyte movement to distinct targets. For example, it is presently believed that prior to the leukocyte extravasation, which is a mandatory component of the inflammatory response, activation of integrins constitutively expressed on leukocytes occurs and is followed by a tight ligand/receptor interaction between integrins (e.g., LFA-1) and one or several distinct intercellular adhesion molecules (ICAMs) designated ICAM-1, ICAM-2, ICAM-3 or ICAM-4 which are expressed on blood vessel endothelial cell surfaces and on other leukocytes. The interaction of the CAMs with the Leukointegrins is a vital step in the normal functioning of the immune system. Immune processes such as antigen presentation, T-cell mediated cytotoxicity and leukocyte extravasation all require cellular adhesion mediated by ICAMs interacting with the Leukointegrins. See generally Kishimoto, T. K.; Rothlein; R. R. *Adv. Pharmacol.* 1994, 25, 117-138 and Diamond, M.; Springer, T. *Current Biology*, 1994, 4, 506-532.

A group of individuals has been identified which lack the appropriate expression of Leukointegrins, a condition termed "Leukocyte Adhesion Deficiency" (Anderson, D. C.; *et al.*, *Fed. Proc.* 1985, 44, 2671-2677 and Anderson, D. C.; *et al.*, *J. Infect. Dis.* 1985, 152, 668-689). These individuals are unable to mount a normal inflammatory and/or immune response(s) due to an inability of their cells to adhere to cellular substrates. These data show that immune reactions are mitigated when lymphocytes are unable to adhere in a normal fashion due to the lack of functional adhesion molecules of the CD18 family. By virtue of the fact that LAD patients who lack CD18 cannot mount an inflammatory response, it is believed that antagonism of CD18, CD11/ICAM interactions will also inhibit an inflammatory response.

It has been demonstrated that the antagonism of the interaction between the CAMs and the Leukointegrins can be realized by agents directed against either component. Specifically, blocking of the CAMs, such as for example ICAM-1, or the Leukointegrins, such as for example LFA-1, by antibodies directed against either or both of these molecules effectively inhibits inflammatory responses. *In vitro* models of inflammation and immune response inhibited by antibodies to CAMs or Leukointegrins include antigen or mitogen-induced lymphocyte proliferation, homotypic aggregation of lymphocytes, T-cell mediated cytotoxicity and antigen-specific induced tolerance. The relevance of the *in vitro* studies are supported by *in vivo* studies with antibodies directed against ICAM-1 or LFA-1. For example, antibodies directed against LFA-1 can prevent thyroid graft rejection and prolong heart allograft survival in mice (Gorski, A.; *Immunology Today*, 1994, 15, 251-255). Of greater significance, antibodies directed against ICAM-1 have shown efficacy *in vivo* as anti-inflammatory agents in human diseases such as renal allograft rejection and rheumatoid arthritis (Rothlein, R. R.; Scharschmidt, L., in: *Adhesion Molecules*; Wegner, C. D., Ed.; 1994, 1-38, Cosimi, C. B.; *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 1990, 144, 4604-4612 and Kavanaugh, A.; *et al.*, *Arthritis Rheum.* 1994, 37, 992-1004) and antibodies directed against LFA-1 have demonstrated immunosuppressive effects in bone marrow transplantation and in the prevention of early rejection of renal allografts (Fischer, A.; *et al.*, *Lancet*, 1989, 2, 1058-1060 and Le Mauff, B.; *et al.*, *Transplantation*, 1991, 52, 291-295).

It has also been demonstrated that a recombinant soluble form of ICAM-1 can act as an inhibitor of the ICAM-1 interaction with LFA-1. Soluble ICAM-1 acts as a direct antagonist of CD18,CD11/ICAM-1 interactions on cells and shows inhibitory activity in *in vitro* models of immune response such as the human mixed lymphocyte response, cytotoxic T cell responses and T cell proliferation from diabetic patients in response to islet cells (Becker, J. C.; *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 1993, 151, 7224 and Roep, B. O.; *et al.*, *Lancet*, 1994, 343, 1590).

Thus, the prior art has demonstrated that large protein molecules which antagonize the binding of the CAMs to the Leukointegrins have therapeutic potential in mitigating inflammatory and immunological responses often associated with the pathogenesis of many autoimmune or inflammatory diseases. However proteins have significant deficiencies as therapeutic agents, including the inability to be delivered orally and potential immunoreactivity which limits the utility of these molecules for chronic administration. Furthermore, protein-based therapeutics are generally expensive to produce.

Several small molecules have been described in the literature which affect the interaction of CAMs and Leukointegrins. A natural product isolated from the root of *Trichilia rubra* was found to be inhibitory in an *in vitro* cell binding assay (Musza, L. L.; *et al.*, *Tetrahedron*, 1994, 50, 11369-11378). One series of molecules (Boschelli, D. H.; *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* 1994, 37, 717 and Boschelli, D. H.; *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* 1995, 38, 4597-4614) was found to be orally active in a reverse passive Arthus reaction, an induced model of inflammation that is characterized by neutrophil accumulation (Chang, Y. H.; *et al.*, *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 1992, 69, 155-164). Another series of molecules was also found to be orally active in a delayed type hypersensitivity reaction in rats (Sanfilippo, P. J.; *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.* 1995, 38, 1057-1059). All of these molecules appear to act nonspecifically, either by inhibiting the transcription of ICAM-1 along with other proteins or act intracellularly to inhibit the activation of the Leukointegrins by an unknown mechanism. None of the molecules directly antagonize the interaction of the CAMs with the

Leukointegrins. Due to lack of potency, lack of selectivity and lack of a specific mechanism of action, the described small molecules are not likely to be satisfactory for therapeutic use.

- 5 It follows that small molecules having the similar ability as large protein molecules to directly and selectively antagonize the binding of the CAMs to the Leukointegrins would make preferable therapeutic agents. WO9839303 discloses a class of small molecule inhibitors of the interaction of LFA-1 and ICAM-1. WO9911258 discloses that the fungal metabolite mevinolin and derivatives bind to LFA-1 and disrupt the interaction of LFA-1  
10 and ICAM-1. WO9949856 discloses a class of peptidomimetic inhibitors of ICAM binding to LFA-1 and Mac-1.

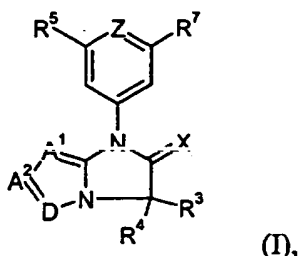
#### Summary of the Invention

- 15 A first aspect of the invention comprises a method for treating or preventing inflammatory and immune cell-mediated diseases by the administration of certain novel small molecules. These compounds act by inhibiting the interaction of cellular adhesion molecules, specifically by antagonizing the binding of human intercellular adhesion molecules (including ICAM-1, ICAM-2 and ICAM-3) to the Leukointegrins (especially  
20 CD18/CD11a). A second aspect of the invention comprises novel small molecules having the above-noted therapeutic activities. A third aspect of the invention comprises methods for making these novel compounds. A final aspect of the invention comprises pharmaceutical compositions comprising the above-mentioned compounds suitable for the prevention or treatment of inflammatory and immune cell-mediated conditions.

25

Detailed Description of the Invention

In its first and broadest aspect, the invention comprises compounds of the formula I



5

wherein:

wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N- or =C(H)-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =N-, =C(H)-, or =C(R')- wherein R' is halogen, -CN, -Oalkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>alkyl or  
10 -SO<sub>2</sub>alkyl, wherein the foregoing alkyl moieties are of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

D is =N-, =C(R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(H)-, =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(S(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(C(O)H)-,  
=C(SR<sup>1a</sup>)-, =C(OR<sup>1a</sup>)- or =C(NHR<sup>1a</sup>)-,

wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100</sup>, which is:

15 branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon  
atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl,  
alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are  
optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) halogen,

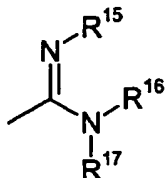
20 (ii) oxo,

(iii) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl,  
naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl,  
oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl,  
oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl,  
25 indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl,

benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxaliny, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

- 5 (a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (b) -COOH,
- (c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
- (d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
- 10 (e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- 15 wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (g) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>11</sup>R<sup>12</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup>
- 20 constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-,
- 25 -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (h) a group of the formula -OR<sup>13</sup>, wherein R<sup>13</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula -SR<sup>14</sup>, wherein R<sup>14</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 30 (j) -CN, or

(k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup> and R<sup>17</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup> and R<sup>17</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(l) halogen,

(m) a group of the formula -NHCONHalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(n) a group of the formula -NHCOOalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(iv) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(v) -CN,

(vi) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(vii) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of



-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(viii) a group of the formula -SR<sup>22</sup>, wherein R<sup>22</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a  
group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(ix) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each,  
independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

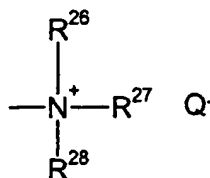
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or  
cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced  
with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(c) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>COOH, wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CONHR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
atoms,

(x) a quaternary group of the formula



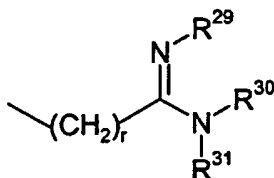
wherein R<sup>26</sup>, R<sup>27</sup> and R<sup>28</sup> are each, independently, a branched or

unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $Q^-$  is a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion,

(xi) a saturated, or partially unsaturated heterocyclic group consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with oxo, and

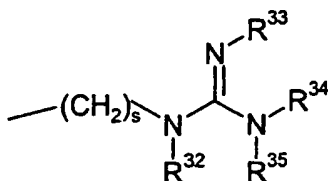
(xii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein  $r$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $R^{29}$ ,  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{29}$ ,  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein  $s$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $R^{32}$ ,  $R^{33}$ ,  $R^{34}$  and  $R^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein

two of R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (G) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (ii) -COOH,
  - (iii) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
  - (iv) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
  - (v) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>36</sup>, wherein R<sup>36</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
  - (vi) a group of the formula -NR<sup>37</sup>R<sup>38</sup>, wherein R<sup>37</sup> and R<sup>38</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>37</sup> and R<sup>38</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (vii) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>39</sup>R<sup>40</sup>, wherein R<sup>39</sup> and R<sup>40</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>39</sup> and R<sup>40</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein

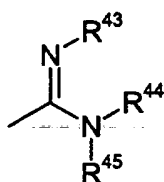
one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(viii) a group of the formula -OR<sup>41</sup>, wherein R<sup>41</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

5 (ix) a group of the formula -SR<sup>42</sup>, wherein R<sup>42</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

(x) -CN, or

(xi) an amidino group of the formula



10 wherein R<sup>43</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> and R<sup>45</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or  
alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>43</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> and R<sup>45</sup> may  
additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon  
atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a  
heterocyclic ring,

15 (H) groups of the formula -NR<sup>46</sup>R<sup>47</sup>, wherein R<sup>46</sup> and R<sup>47</sup> are each  
independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono- or  
polysubstituted with halogen, or R<sup>100</sup>, wherein R<sup>100</sup> is as hereinbefore  
defined,

20 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms  
selected from N, O, C and S, or bicyclic heterocyclic groups consisting of 8 to  
11 atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to  
imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl,  
morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyranly,  
tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolany, wherein  
25 said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties  
selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii) -OR<sup>101</sup>, wherein R<sup>101</sup> is:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -CONR<sup>102</sup>R<sup>103</sup>, wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-, or
- (e) -COOR<sup>104</sup>, wherein R<sup>104</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

(iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with -OR<sup>112</sup>, wherein R<sup>112</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said

hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-,  
-NH-, or -NMe-,

- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- 5 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 10 (a) oxo,
- (b) -OH,
- (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
- (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- 15 (f) -NHMe,
- (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
- (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- 20 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) -OH,
- 25 (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -NHMe,
- (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHCOMe,
- 30 (g) oxo,

- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indoly, thiopheny, pyridyl, pyrimidiny, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridaziny, pyraziny, triaziny, indoliziny, isoindoly, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiopheny, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny,
- (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2 \text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indoly, thiopheny, pyridyl, pyrimidiny, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridaziny, pyraziny, triaziny, indoliziny, isoindoly, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiopheny, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinolizinyl, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny,



piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

(c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(ix) -CHO,

(x) the halogen atoms, and

(xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl,

(J) the halogen atoms, and

(K) -CN, and

wherein R<sup>1a</sup> is R<sup>100</sup>;

25 X is an oxygen or sulfur atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is:

(A) a hydrogen atom, or

(B) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted with:

30

- (i) a group of the formula  $-OR^{48}$ , wherein  $R^{48}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- (ii) a group of the formula  $-NR^{49}R^{50}$ , wherein  $R^{49}$  and  $R^{50}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms, or acyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms;

$R^4$  is a group of the formula  $(CR^{51}R^{52})_x(CR^{53}R^{54})_yR^{55}$ , wherein,

x is 0 or 1,

y is 0 or 1,

$R^{51}$ ,  $R^{52}$  and  $R^{53}$  are each, independently:

- (A) a hydrogen atom,
- (B) a group of the formula  $-OR^{56}$ , wherein  $R^{56}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

$R^{54}$  is:

- (A) a group of the formula  $R^{57}$ , wherein  $R^{57}$  is independently selected from the same class as is  $R^1$ , or
- (B) a group of the formula  $-OR^{58}$ , wherein  $R^{58}$  is independently selected from the same class as is  $R^1$ ;

$R^{55}$  is:

aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

- (A) R<sup>59</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolynyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
  - (ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>60</sup>, wherein R<sup>60</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
  - (iii) a group of the formula -NR<sup>61</sup>R<sup>62</sup>, wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (iv) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>63</sup>R<sup>64</sup>, wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (v) a group of the formula -OR<sup>65</sup>, wherein R<sup>65</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (vi) a group of the formula  $-SR^{66}$ , wherein  $R^{66}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (vii)  $-CN$ ,
- (viii) nitro, or
- 5 (ix) halogen,
- (B) methyl, which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with fluorine atoms and additionally is optionally monosubstituted with  $R^{59}$ ,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- 10 (D) a group of the formula  $-COOR^{67}$ , wherein  $R^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-NR^{68}R^{69}$ , wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59}$ ,
- 15 (F) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{70}R^{71}$ , wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59}$ ,
- 20 (G) a group of the formula  $-COR^{72}$ , wherein  $R^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or  $R^{59}$ ,
- 25

(H) a group of the formula  $-OR^{73}$ , wherein  $R^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59}$ ,

(I) a group of the formula  $-SR^{74}$ , wherein  $R^{74}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59}$ ,

5 (J)  $-CN$ ,

(K) nitro, or

(L) halogen;

$R^5$  is Cl or trifluoromethyl;

10 Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(R^6)-$  wherein  $R^6$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl or trifluoromethyl; and,

$R^7$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl,  $-CN$ , nitro or trifluoromethyl, with the condition that when Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ,  $R^7$  is chlorine, trifluoromethyl,  $-CN$  or nitro;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

As the term is used herein, a "pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion" is any counter ion generally regarded by those skilled in the pharmaceutical art as being pharmaceutically acceptable. For a discussion of what are pharmaceutically acceptable counter ions, reference may be had to Stephen M. Bergle, Lyle D. Bighley and Donald C. Monkhouse, 20 "Pharmaceutical Salts", *Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 66 (1977), 1-19. By way of non-limiting example, the chloride, bromide, acetate, and sulphate ions are pharmaceutically acceptable counter ions.

Preferred are compounds of the formula I wherein:

25  $A^1$  is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ;

$A^2$  is  $=N-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ , or  $=C(R')-$  wherein  $R'$  is halogen,  $-CN$ ,  $-Oalkyl$ ,  $-CO_2alkyl$  or  $-SO_2alkyl$ , wherein the foregoing alkyl moieties are of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

D is  $=N-$ ,  $=C(R^1)-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ ,  $=C(SO_2R^1)-$ ,  $=C(S(O)R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)H)-$ ,  $=C(SR^{1a})-$ ,  $=C(OR^{1a})-$  or  $=C(NHR^{1a})-$ ,

wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100a</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms; in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) halogen,

(ii) oxo,

(iii) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, phthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

(a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(b) -COOH,

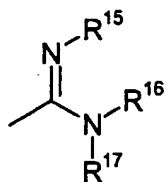
(c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,

(d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,

(e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

(f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (g) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{11}\text{R}^{12}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  $\text{SO}_2-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (h) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{13}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{13}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{14}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{14}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (j)  $-\text{CN}$ , or
- (k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (l) halogen,
- (m) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCONHalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (n) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCOOalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (iv) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

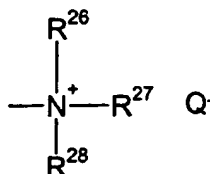
- (v) -CN,
- (vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-,  $\text{SO}_2$ -, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{21}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (viii) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{22}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{22}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (ix) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{23}$  and  $\text{R}^{24}$  are each, independently,
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) a group of the formula  $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{COOH}$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,



- (d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or
- (e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

5

- (x) a quaternary group of the formula



wherein  $R^{26}$ ,  $R^{27}$  and  $R^{28}$  are each, independently, a branched or unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $Q^-$  is pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion,

10

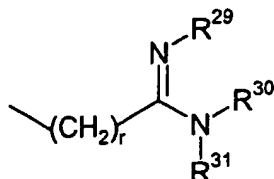
- (xi) a saturated, or partially unsaturated heterocyclic group consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with oxo, and

15

- (xii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (E) amidino groups of the formula

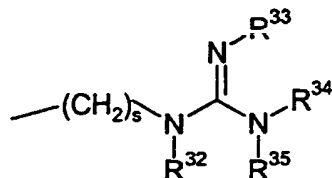
20



wherein r is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $R^{29}$ ,  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  are each, independently, a

hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

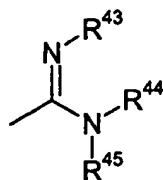
- 5 (F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein s is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- 10 (G) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and
- 20 independently replaced with:
- (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (ii) -COOH,
  - (iii) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
  - (iv) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
  - 25 (v) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>36</sup>, wherein R<sup>36</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

- (vi) a group of the formula  $-NR^{37}R^{38}$ , wherein  $R^{37}$  and  $R^{38}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{37}$  and  $R^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (vii) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{39}R^{40}$ , wherein  $R^{39}$  and  $R^{40}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{39}$  and  $R^{40}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-S-$ ,  $S(O)-$ ,  $SO_2-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ ,
- (viii) a group of the formula  $-OR^{41}$ , wherein  $R^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (ix) a group of the formula  $-SR^{42}$ , wherein  $R^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (x)  $-CN$ , or
- (xi) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (H) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein  $R^{46}$  and  $R^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen, or  $R^{100a}$ , wherein  $R^{100a}$  is as hereinbefore defined,
- 5 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, or bicyclic heterocyclic groups consisting of 8 to 11 atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein
- 10 said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (i) oxo,
- (ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:
- 15 (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl
- 20 group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon
- 25 atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-S-$ ,  $S(O)-$ ,  $SO_2-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or
- (e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

- (iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
  - (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
  - (c) benzoyl,
  - (d) benzyl or
  - (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-\text{OR}^{112}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  $\text{SO}_2-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
  - (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
  - (c)  $-\text{OR}^{113}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d)  $-\text{OCOCH}_3$ ,
  - (e)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
  - (f)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
  - (g)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
  - (h)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , and

- (i)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{114}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 5 (a)  $-\text{OH}$ ,  
(b)  $-\text{OR}^{115}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(c)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  
10 (d)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,  
(e)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,  
(f)  $-\text{NHCOMe}$ ,  
(g) oxo,  
(h)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,  
15 (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,  
(j) the halogen atoms,  
(k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly,  
20 tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, and  
(l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl,  
25 indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl,  
30 (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2 \text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:

- 5 (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizyl, cinnolyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 10 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranlyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- 20 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 25 (viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:
- 30 (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl,

- pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizyl, cinnolyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazolyl, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuran, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocycle is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl,



indoliziny, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl,  
benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny,  
quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny,  
pteridiny and quinazoliny,

5 (J) the halogen atoms, and

(K) -CN and,

wherein R<sup>1a</sup> is R<sup>100a</sup>;

X is an oxygen or sulfur atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is:

10 (A) a hydrogen atom, or

(B) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted with:

15 (i) a group of the formula -OR<sup>48</sup>, wherein R<sup>48</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or

(ii) a group of the formula -NR<sup>49</sup>R<sup>50</sup>, wherein R<sup>49</sup> and R<sup>50</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms, or acyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

20 R<sup>55</sup> is:

aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl,  
25 benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

- (A) R<sup>59a</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizynyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolynyl, isoquinolynyl, purinyl, quinolizynyl, cinnolynyl, pthalanynyl, quinoxalynyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
  - (ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>60</sup>, wherein R<sup>60</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
  - (iii) a group of the formula -NR<sup>61</sup>R<sup>62</sup>, wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (iv) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>63</sup>R<sup>64</sup>, wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (v) a group of the formula -OR<sup>65</sup>, wherein R<sup>65</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (vi) a group of the formula  $-SR^{66}$ , wherein  $R^{66}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (vii)  $-CN$ ,
- (viii) nitro, or
- 5 (ix) halogen,
- (B) methyl, which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with fluorine atoms and additionally is optionally monosubstituted with  $R^{59a}$ ,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- 10 (D) a group of the formula  $-COOR^{67}$ , wherein  $R^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-NR^{68}R^{69}$ , wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 15 or wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59a}$ ,
- 20 (F) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{70}R^{71}$ , wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- 25 and wherein one of  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59a}$ ,
- (G) a group of the formula  $-COR^{72}$ , wherein  $R^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or  $R^{59a}$ ,

- (H) a group of the formula  $-OR^{73}$ , wherein  $R^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59a}$ ,
- (I) a group of the formula  $-SR^{74}$ , wherein  $R^{74}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59a}$ ,
- 5 (J)  $-CN$ ,
- (K) nitro, or
- (L) halogen;
- $R^5$  is Cl or trifluoromethyl;
- Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(R^6)-$  wherein  $R^6$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl or trifluoromethyl; and,
- 10  $R^7$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl,  $-CN$ , nitro or trifluoromethyl, with the condition that when Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ,  $R^7$  is chlorine, trifluoromethyl,  $-CN$  or nitro;
- and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

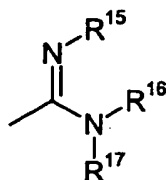
15

More preferred are compounds of the formula I wherein:

- $A^1$  is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ;
- $A^2$  is  $=N-$ , or  $=C(H)-$ ;
- 20 D is  $=N-$ ,  $=C(R^1)-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ ,  $=C(SO_2R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)H)-$  or  $=C(C(O)R^1)-$ , wherein  $R^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:
- (A)  $-R^{100b}$ , which is:
- branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:
- 25 (i) oxo,
- (ii) phenyl, wherein one hydrogen atom of said phenyl group is optionally replaced with:

- (a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (b) -COOH,
- (c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
- (d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
- 5 (e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, 10 cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (g) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>11</sup>R<sup>12</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms 15 or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said 20 hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (h) a group of the formula -OR<sup>13</sup>, wherein R<sup>13</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula -SR<sup>14</sup>, wherein R<sup>14</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 25 (j) -CN, or

- (k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (l) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCONHalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

- (m) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCOOalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

- (iii) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

- (iv) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,

- (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{21}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{Oalkyl}$  (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHMe}$  and  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,

(vi) a group of the formula  $-NR^{23}R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{23}$  and  $R^{24}$  are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

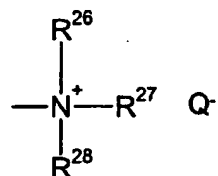
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

(vii) a quaternary group of the formula

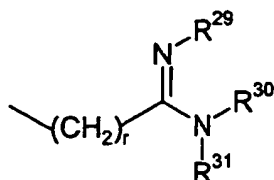


wherein  $R^{26}$ ,  $R^{27}$  and  $R^{28}$  are each, independently, a branched or unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $Q^-$  is a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion, or

(viii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

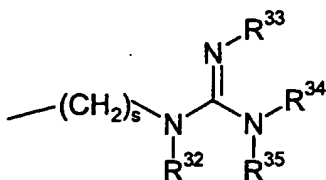
- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,

(E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein  $r$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein  $s$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(G) phenyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said phenyl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(ii)  $-\text{COOH}$ ,

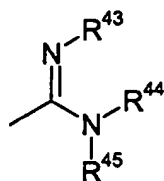
(iii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,

(iv)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,

(v) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{36}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{36}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,



- (vi) a group of the formula  $-NR^{37}R^{38}$ , wherein  $R^{37}$  and  $R^{38}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{37}$  and  $R^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (vii) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{39}R^{40}$ , wherein  $R^{39}$  and  $R^{40}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{39}$  and  $R^{40}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ ,
- (viii) a group of the formula  $-OR^{41}$ , wherein  $R^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (ix) a group of the formula  $-SR^{42}$ , wherein  $R^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (x)  $-CN$ , or
- (xi) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (H) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein  $R^{46}$  and  $R^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono-or polysubstituted with halogen, or  $R^{100b}$ , wherein  $R^{100b}$  is as hereinbefore defined,
- 5 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-
- 10 substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (i) oxo,
  - (ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:
    - (a) a hydrogen atom,
    - (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl
    - 15 group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
    - (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl
    - group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
    - 20 (d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said
    - 25 hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or
    - (e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
    - (iii)  $-CONR^{105}R^{106}$ , wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  are each independently:
      - (a) a hydrogen atom,

- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- 5 (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with -OR<sup>112</sup>, wherein R<sup>112</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said
- 10 hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2
- 15 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
- 20 (b) -OH,
- (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
- (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHMe,
- 25 (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
- (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic,
- 30 and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally

replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:

- (a) -OH,
- (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -NHMe,
- (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHCOMe,
- (g) oxo,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i) -CN,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolany, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolyzinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny,
- (vii) -SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>108</sup>, wherein R<sup>108</sup> is:
  - (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolyzinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany,

benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:

- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnolinyl,

- pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl,
- (J) the halogen atoms, and

(K) -CN;

X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

5 R<sup>55</sup> is:

aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

10 (A) R<sup>59b</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, and thiazolyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

15 (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,

(ii) -CN,

(iii) nitro, or

(iv) halogen,

20 (B) methyl, which is optionally trisubstituted with fluorine atoms or is optionally monosubstituted with R<sup>59b</sup>,

(C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,

25 (D) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>67</sup>, wherein R<sup>67</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

(E) a group of the formula -COR<sup>72</sup>, wherein R<sup>72</sup> is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or R<sup>59b</sup>,

(F) a group of the formula  $-OR^{73}$ , wherein  $R^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59b}$ ,

(G)  $-CN$ ,

(H) nitro, or

5 (I) halogen;

$R^5$  is Cl;

Z is  $=C(H)-$ ; and,

$R^7$  is Cl;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

Even more preferred are compounds of the formula I, wherein:

$A^1$  is  $=N-$ ;

$A^2$  is  $=C(H)-$ ;

15 D is  $=C(R^1)-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ ,  $=C(SO_2R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)H)-$  or  $=C(C(O)R^1)-$ , wherein  $R^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:

(A)  $-R^{100c}$ , which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

20

(i) oxo,

(ii) phenyl, wherein one hydrogen atom of said phenyl group is optionally replaced with:

(a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

25

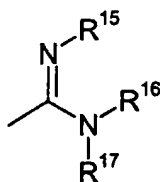
(b)  $-COOH$ ,

(c)  $-SO_2OH$ ,

(d)  $-PO(OH)_2$ .



- (e) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^8$ , wherein  $\text{R}^8$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (f) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^9\text{R}^{10}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^9$  and  $\text{R}^{10}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^9$  and  $\text{R}^{10}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (g) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{11}\text{R}^{12}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (h) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{13}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{13}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{14}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{14}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (j)  $-\text{CN}$ , or
- (k) an amidino group of the formula



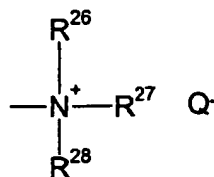
wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge

of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (l) a group of the formula  $\text{-NHCONHalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- 5 (m) a group of the formula  $\text{-NHCOOalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (iii) a group of the formula  $\text{-COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- 10 (iv) a group of the formula  $\text{-CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by
- 15  $\text{-O-}$ ,  $\text{-NH-}$ , or  $\text{-NMe-}$ ,
- (v) a group of the formula  $\text{-OR}^{21}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of
- 20  $\text{-OH}$ ,  $\text{-Oalkyl}$  (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $\text{-NH}_2$ ,  $\text{-NHMe}$  and  $\text{-NMe}_2$ ,
- (vi) a group of the formula  $\text{-NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{23}$  and  $\text{R}^{24}$  are each, independently,
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- 25 (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of
- 30  $\text{-OH}$ ,  $\text{-Oalkyl}$  (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $\text{-NH}_2$ ,  $\text{-NHMe}$  and  $\text{-NMe}_2$ ,

- (c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein  $m$  is 0, 1 or 2,  
 (d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein  $n$  is 0, 1 or 2, and  
 wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or  
 (e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein  $n$  is 0, 1 or 2,  
 and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
 atoms,

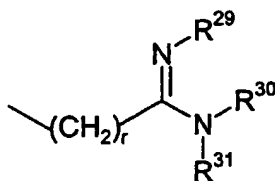
(vii) a quaternary group of the formula



wherein  $R^{26}$ ,  $R^{27}$  and  $R^{28}$  are each, independently, a branched or  
 unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $Q^-$  is a  
 pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion, or

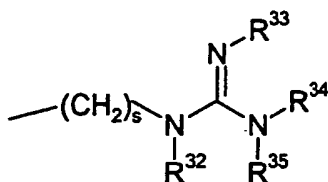
(viii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein  $r$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $R^{29}$ ,  $R^{30}$  and  $R^{31}$  are each, independently, a  
 hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{29}$ ,  $R^{30}$   
 and  $R^{31}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5  
 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a  
 heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein  $s$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each,

independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein  
 5 two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(G) phenyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said phenyl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

- 10 (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (ii)  $-\text{COOH}$ ,
- (iii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,
- (iv)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,
- (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{36}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{36}$  is straight or branched  
 15 alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{37}\text{R}^{38}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  are each,  
 independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl  
 of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$   
 and  $\text{R}^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms  
 20 which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{39}\text{R}^{40}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  are each,  
 independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or  
 cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  constitute a  
 25 saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with  
 the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein

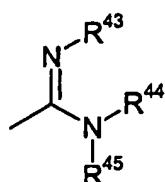
one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(viii) a group of the formula  $-OR^{41}$ , wherein  $R^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

5 (ix) a group of the formula  $-SR^{42}$ , wherein  $R^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

(x) -CN, or

(xi) an amidino group of the formula



10 wherein  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

15 (H) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein  $R^{46}$  and  $R^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or  $R^{100c}$ , wherein  $R^{100c}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

(I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and  
20 thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:

25 (a) a hydrogen atom,

- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -CONR<sup>102</sup>R<sup>103</sup>, wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-, or
- (e) -COOR<sup>104</sup>, wherein R<sup>104</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- (iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with -OR<sup>112</sup>, wherein R<sup>112</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

- 5 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
  - (b) -OH,
  - (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
  - 10 (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (f) -NHMe,
  - (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
  - (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or  
15 cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 20 (a) -OH,
  - (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (d) -NHMe,
  - (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - 25 (f) -NHCOMe,
  - (g) oxo,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i) -CN,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,

- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- 5 (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the
- 10 class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and
- 15 thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched
- 20 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{119}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{119}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 25 (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the
- 30 class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of



- 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-OR^{120}$  (wherein  $R^{120}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or  $-OR^{121}$  (wherein  $R^{121}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-OR^{122}$  (wherein  $R^{122}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix)  $-CHO$ ,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl and imidazolyl,
- (J) the halogen atoms, and
- (K)  $-CN$ ;
- X is an oxygen atom;
- $R^3$  is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;
- $R^4$  is a group of the formula  $-CH_2R^{55}$ , wherein,
- $R^{55}$  is:
- phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:
- (A)  $R^{59c}$ , which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) -CN,
- 5 (iii) nitro, or
- (iv) halogen,
- (B) methyl,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally
- 10 monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (D) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{67}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5
- 15 carbon atoms,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, or fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (G) -CN,
- (H) nitro, or
- 20 (I) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl;

Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

$\text{R}^7$  is Cl;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25

Further preferred are compounds of the formula I wherein:

$\text{A}^1$  is  $=\text{N}-$ ;

$\text{A}^2$  is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ;

D is  $=C(H)-$ ,  $=C(SO_2R^1)-$  or  $=C(C(O)R^1)-$ , wherein  $R^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:

(A)  $-R^{100d}$ , which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) oxo,

(ii) a group of the formula  $-COOR^{18}$ , wherein  $R^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(iii) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{19}R^{20}$ , wherein  $R^{19}$  and  $R^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{19}$  and  $R^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ ,

(iv) a group of the formula  $-OR^{21}$ , wherein  $R^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  $-OH$ ,  $-Oalkyl$  (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  and  $-NMe_2$ ,

(v) a group of the formula  $-NR^{23}R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{23}$  and  $R^{24}$  are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of

-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

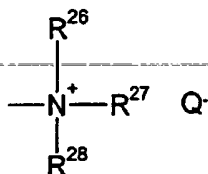
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

(vi) a quaternary group of the formula



wherein R<sup>26</sup>, R<sup>27</sup> and R<sup>28</sup> are each, independently, a branched or unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and Q<sup>-</sup> is a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion, or

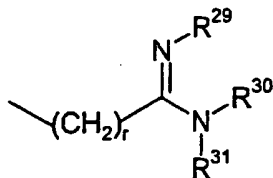
(vii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

(B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,

(D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,

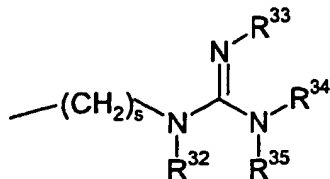
(E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein r is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5

carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



5 wherein s is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

10 (G) groups of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{46}\text{R}^{47}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{46}$  and  $\text{R}^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or  $\text{R}^{100d}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{100d}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

(H) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and  
15 thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii)  $-\text{OR}^{101}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{101}$  is:

- 20 (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{OR}^{110}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHMe}$  or  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl  
25 group is optionally replaced with  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{OR}^{111}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHMe}$  or  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,

- 5 (d)  $-\text{CONR}^{102}\text{R}^{103}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ , or
- (e)  $-\text{COOR}^{104}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- 10 (iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- 15 (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-\text{OR}^{112}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- 20 (iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 25 (a) oxo,
- 30 (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,

- (c)  $-OR^{113}$ , wherein  $R^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (d)  $-OCOCH_3$ ,  
 (e)  $-NH_2$ ,  
 (f)  $-NHMe$ ,  
 5 (g)  $-NMe_2$ ,  
 (h)  $-CO_2H$ , and  
 (i)  $-CO_2R^{114}$  wherein  $R^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or  
 cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,  
 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic,  
 10 and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally  
 replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting  
 of:  
 (a)  $-OH$ ,  
 (b)  $-OR^{115}$ , wherein  $R^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 15 (c)  $-NH_2$ ,  
 (d)  $-NHMe$ ,  
 (e)  $-NMe_2$ ,  
 (f)  $-NHCOMe$ ,  
 (g) oxo,  
 20 (h)  $-CO_2R^{116}$ , wherein  $R^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,  
 (i)  $-CN$ ,  
 (j) the halogen atoms,  
 (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl,  
 piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and  
 25 (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl,  
 thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,  
 (vii)  $-SO_2R^{108}$ , wherein  $R^{108}$  is:  
 (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of  
 phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl  
 30 thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is

optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

5 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6  
10 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

(c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched  
15 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:

(a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is  
20 optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

25 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6  
30 carbon atoms), or



- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl and imidazolyl, and
- (I) the halogen atoms,
- X is an oxygen atom;
- R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;
- R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,
- R<sup>55</sup> is:
- phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:
- (A) R<sup>59d</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:
- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) -CN,
- (iii) nitro, or
- (iv) halogen,
- (B) methyl,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,

- (D) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{67}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, or fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (G)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (H) nitro, or
- (I) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl;

Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

$\text{R}^7$  is Cl;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

Especially preferred are compounds of the formula I wherein:

$\text{A}^1$  is  $=\text{N}-$ ;

$\text{A}^2$  is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ;

D is  $=\text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^1)-$  or  $=\text{C}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^1)-$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:

20

(A)  $-\text{R}^{100e}$ , which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

25

(i) oxo,

(ii) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(iii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or

cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

5

- (iv) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>, or

10

- (v) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

15

- (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

20

(c) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>COOH, wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CONHR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

25

- (B) groups of the formula -NR<sup>46</sup>R<sup>47</sup>, wherein R<sup>46</sup> and R<sup>47</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or R<sup>100e</sup>, wherein R<sup>100e</sup> is as hereinbefore defined, and

(C) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,

(c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,

(d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or

(e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

(iii)  $-CONR^{105}R^{106}$ , wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  are each independently:

(a) a hydrogen atom, or

(b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,

or, wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one

carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

- 5 (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 10 (a) oxo,
- (b) -OH,
- (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
- (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- 15 (f) -NHMe,
- (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
- (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- 20 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) -OH,
- 25 (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -NHMe,
- (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHCOMe,
- 30 (g) oxo,

- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2 \text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{119}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{119}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and

-OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

(c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and

(ix) -CHO;

X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

R<sup>55</sup> is:

phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:

(A) R<sup>59e</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

(i) methyl,

(ii) -CN,

(iii) nitro, or

(iv) halogen,

(B) methyl,

(C) -CN,

(D) nitro, or

(E) halogen;

R<sup>5</sup> is Cl;

Z is =C(H)-; and,

R<sup>7</sup> is Cl;

5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

More especially preferred are compounds of the formula I wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =C(H)-;

10 D is =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)- or =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100e</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, or cycloalkyl group one to three hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

15

(i) oxo,

(ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

20

(iii) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

25

(iv) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or

(v) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,



- (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,
- (d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or
- (e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and
- (B) saturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or di-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (i) oxo,
- (ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or
- (e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

(iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:

- (a) a hydrogen atom, or
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally monosubstituted with  $-\text{OH}$ ,  $-\text{OR}^{123}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{123}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,  $-\text{NMe}_2$ , pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl or morpholinyl, or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,

(iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

(v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one to three hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:

- (a) oxo,
- (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
- (c)  $-\text{OR}^{113}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d)  $-\text{OCOCH}_3$ ,
- (e)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
- (f)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
- (g)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , and
- (i)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{114}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,

- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or two hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) -OH,
  - 5 (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (d) -NHMe,
  - (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - (f) -NHCOMe,
  - 10 (g) oxo,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i) -CN,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,
  - (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
  - 15 (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii) -SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>108</sup>, wherein R<sup>108</sup> is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with
  - 20 one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
  - (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of
  - 25 pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

- 5 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-OR^{119}$  (wherein  $R^{119}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii)  $-COR^{109}$ , wherein  $R^{109}$  is:
- 10 (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-OR^{120}$  (wherein  $R^{120}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or
- 15  $-OR^{121}$  (wherein  $R^{121}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of
- 20 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-OR^{122}$  (wherein  $R^{122}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and
- (ix)  $-CHO$ ;
- X is an oxygen atom;
- $R^3$  is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;
- 25  $R^4$  is a group of the formula  $-CH_2R^{55}$ , wherein,
- $R^{55}$  is:
- phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:
- (A)  $R^{59e}$ , which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the

hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

- 5 (i) methyl,  
(ii) -CN,  
(iii) nitro, or  
(iv) halogen,  
(B) methyl,  
(C) -CN,  
(D) nitro, or  
10 (E) halogen;

R<sup>5</sup> is Cl;

Z is =C(H)-; and,

R<sup>7</sup> is Cl;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

Penultimately preferred are compounds of formula I wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =C(H)-;

D is =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

20

(A) methyl, and

(B) saturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or di-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

25

(i) oxo,

(ii) -OR<sup>101</sup>, wherein R<sup>101</sup> is:

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is

an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,  
or

(c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said acyl  
group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is  
an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:

(a) a hydrogen atom, or

(b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7  
atoms, wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally

monosubstituted with -OH, -OR<sup>123</sup> (wherein R<sup>123</sup> is an alkyl  
moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe, -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl or morpholinyl,

or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon

bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen

atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one

carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by

-O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched  
alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,

(v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one or two  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl group are optionally replaced with moieties  
independently selected from the class consisting of:

(a) oxo,

(b) -OH,

(c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

(d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,

(e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,

(f) -NHMe,

(g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and

- (i)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{114}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or two hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety selected from the class consisting of:
- (a)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
- (b)  $-\text{OR}^{115}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
- (d)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
- (e)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
- (f)  $-\text{NHCOMe}$ ,
- (g) oxo,
- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2 \text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one halogen, straight or

branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or  $-OR^{121}$  (wherein  $R^{121}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and

(ix)  $-CHO$ ;

X is an oxygen atom;

5  $R^3$  is methyl;

$R^4$  is a group of the formula  $-CH_2R^{55}$ , wherein,

$R^{55}$  is:

phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:

(A)  $R^{59e}$ , which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidinyl

10

(B)  $-CN$ ,

(B) nitro, or

(C) halogen;

$R^5$  is Cl;

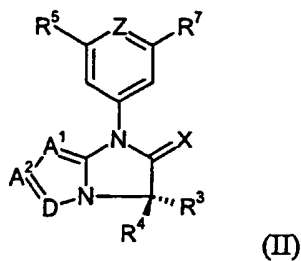
15 Z is  $=C(H)-$ ; and,

$R^7$  is Cl;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

It will be appreciated that the compounds of the formula I have at least one chiral center.

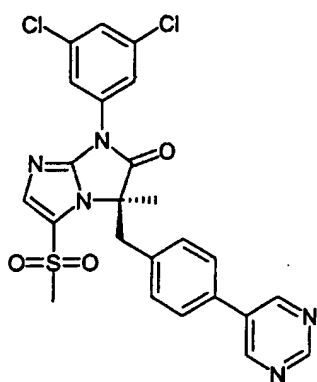
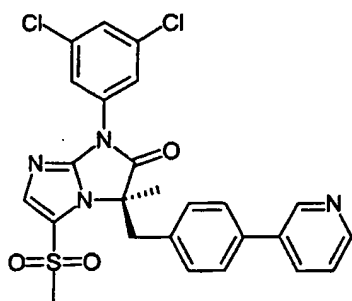
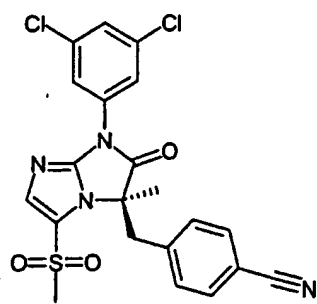
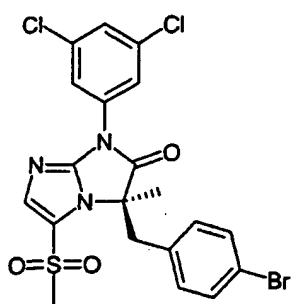
20 Ultimately preferred are those compounds of formula I with the absolute stereochemistry depicted below in formula II.



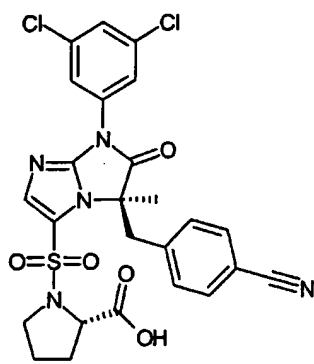
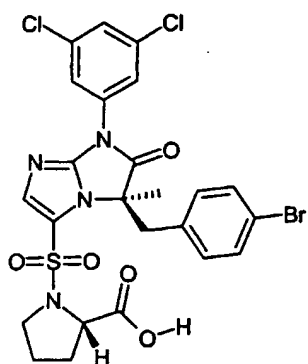
Also preferred are the following specific compounds:

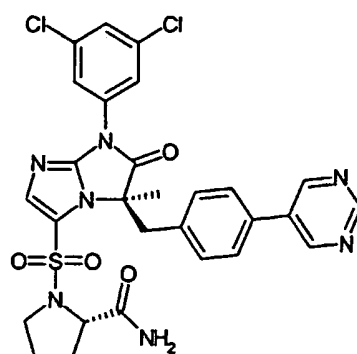
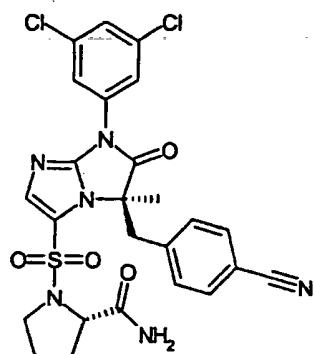
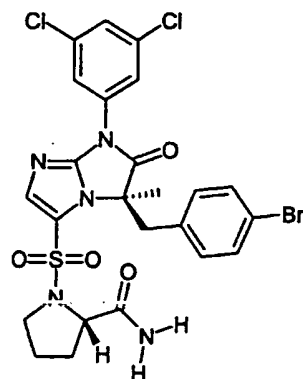
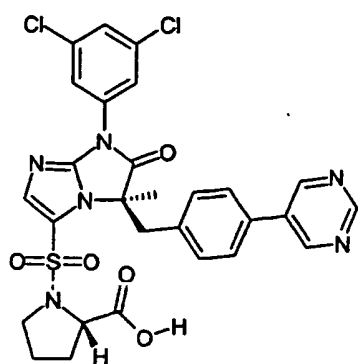
25



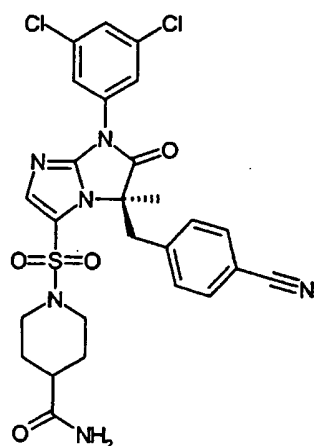
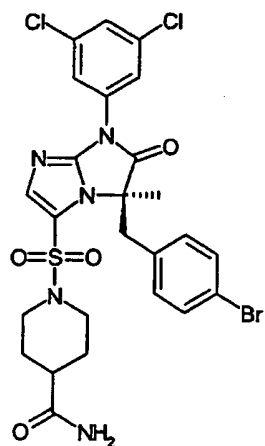


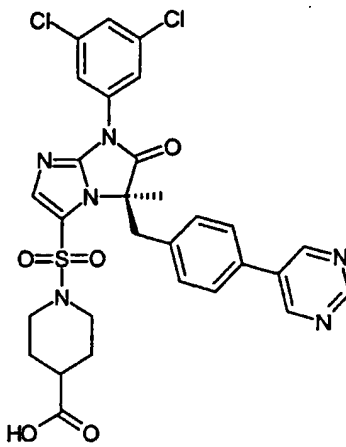
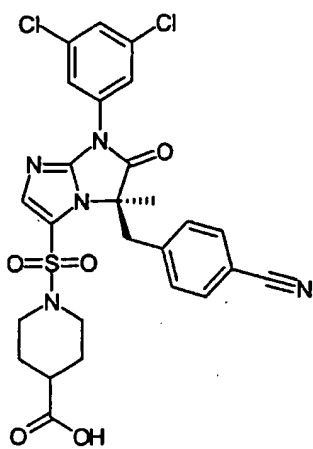
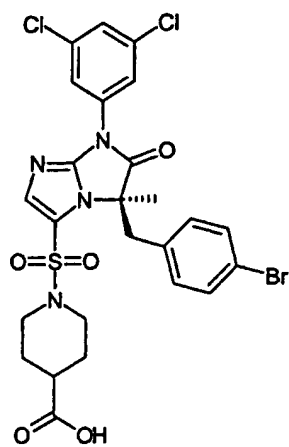
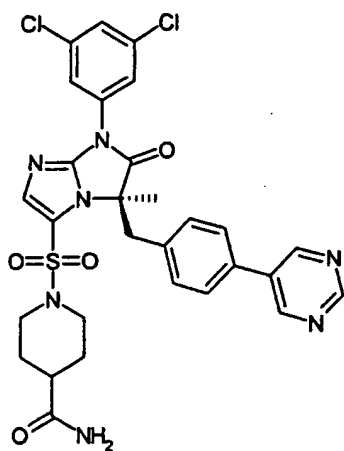
5



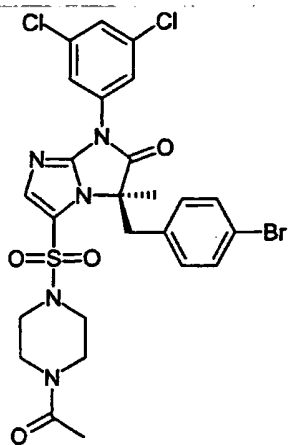
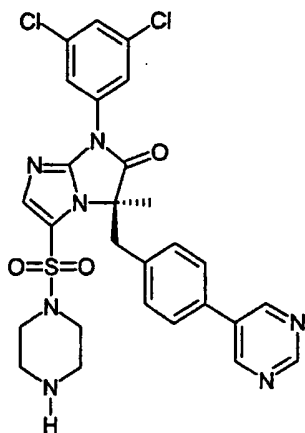
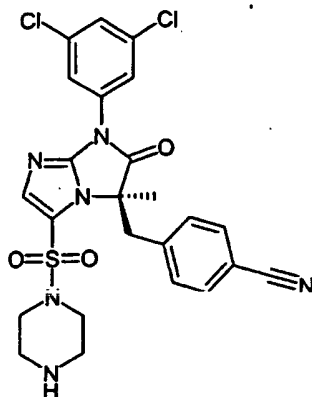
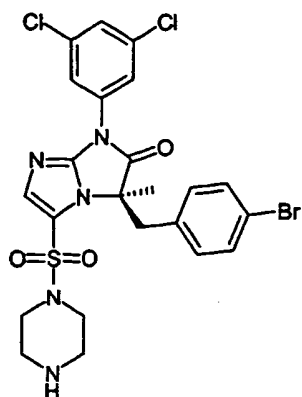


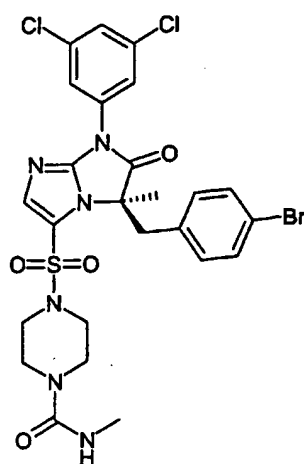
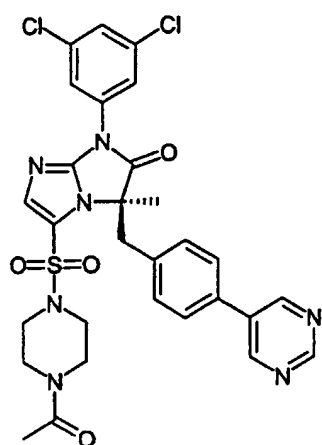
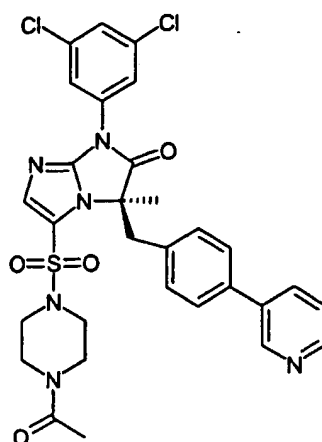
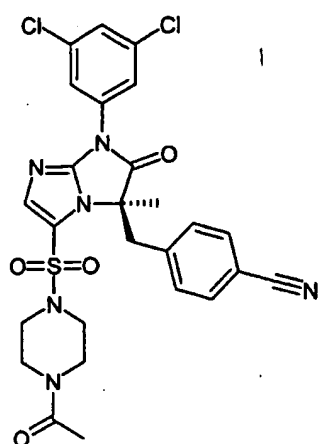
5

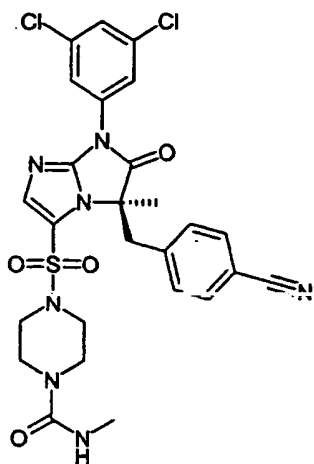




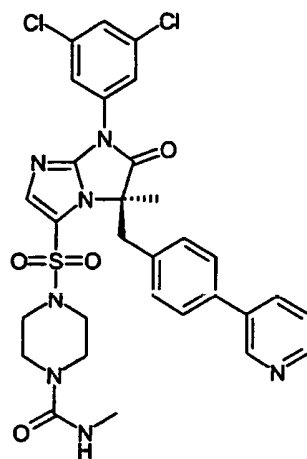
5



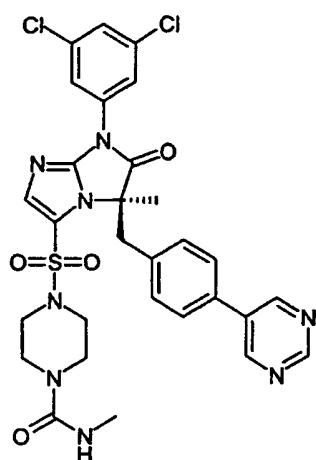




,



, and



,

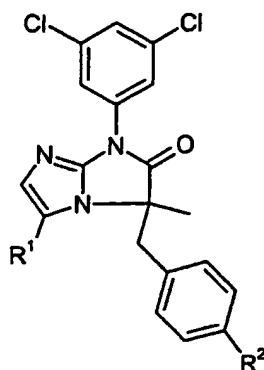
5

and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts.

Additionally it will be noted that certain compounds are usedul as intermediates in the synthesis of the above compounds of the invention. In particular, compounds of the

10

formula



wherein,

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

- 5 (A) hydrogen,
- (B) the halogen atoms, and
- (C) SO<sub>2</sub>M<sup>+</sup>, wherein M<sup>+</sup> is
  - (i) Li<sup>+</sup>,
  - (ii) Na<sup>+</sup>,
  - 10 (iii) K<sup>+</sup>, or
  - (iv) MgX<sup>+</sup>, wherein X is a halogen; and

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

- (A) the halogen atoms,
- (B) aryl, selected from the class of
  - 15 (i) phenyl,
  - (ii) pyridyl, and
  - (iii) pyrimidyl, and
- (C) CN.

20

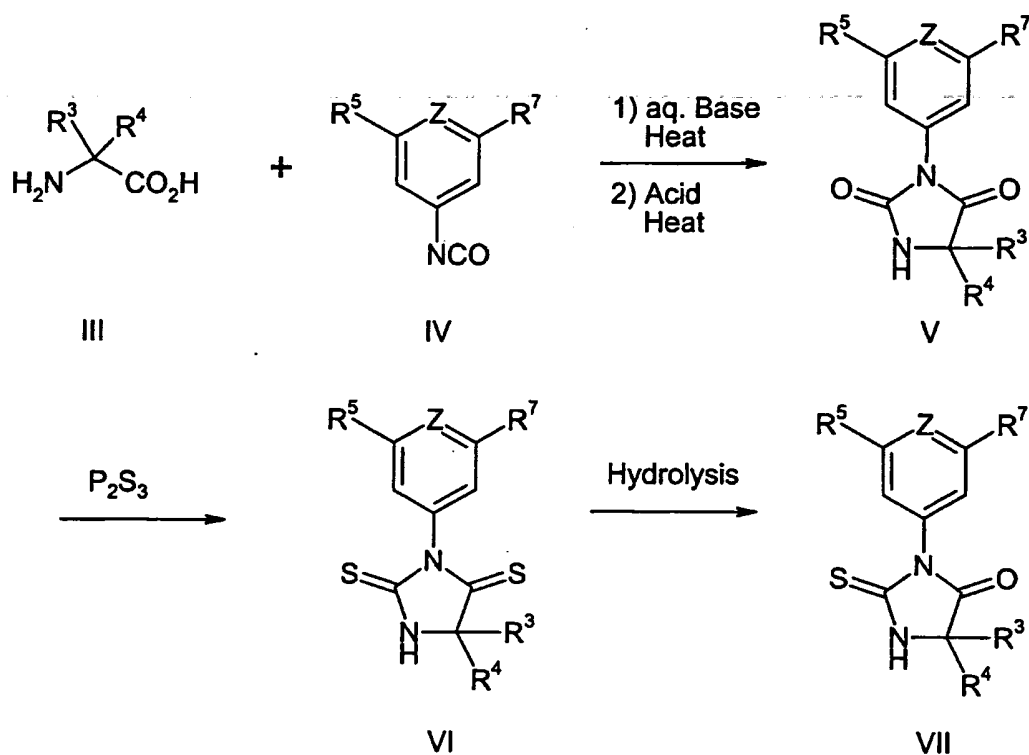
#### Synthesis of the Compounds of the Invention

Compounds of the invention may be prepared by the general methods described below. Typically, reaction progress may be monitored by thin layer chromatography (TLC) if

desired. If desired, intermediates and products may be purified by chromatography on silica gel and/or recrystallization, and characterized by one or more of the following techniques: NMR, mass spectroscopy and melting point. Starting materials and reagents are either commercially available or may be prepared by one skilled in the art using  
 5 methods described in the chemical literature.

Intermediates used in the preparation of the compounds of formula I may be prepared by the method described below and outlined in Scheme I.

Scheme I



10

An appropriate amino acid (III) is dissolved in aqueous base (such as, for example, NaOH, KOH,  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ ,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ,  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$  or  $\text{KHCO}_3$ ) and warmed to between about 20 and 90  
 °C. An appropriate isocyanate (IV) is added to this mixture and the resulting solution is  
 15 stirred until the reaction essentially reaches completion. Upon cooling, the mixture is acidified and the resulting ureidoacetic acid is isolated by filtration or by extraction into



organic solvent. Removal of solvent produces the intermediate ureidoacetic acid. In the manner reported by Sauli (US Patent 4,099,008), the intermediate ureidoacetic acid is cyclized by heating in the presence of a catalytic amount of acid (such as, for example, sulfuric acid, methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid or hydrochloric acid) in an organic or aqueous solvent, to produce the desired hydantoin (V). Workup consists of collection of the hydantoin by filtration and purification by, for example, silica gel chromatography or recrystallization.

If the thiocarbonyl VII is desired, several reagents are known in the literature which will convert carbonyls to thiocarbonyls. A typical sequence involves heating the substrate with a reagent such as  $P_2S_3$  in a high boiling solvent such as tetralin for between 1 and 48 h. Isolation of the product follows relatively standard conditions such as the dilution of the mixture into an organic solvent such as EtOAc and washing this mixture with water and saturated aqueous NaCl followed by drying and concentration. Purification is accomplished by silica gel chromatography or recrystallization, to afford VI.

Intermediate VI can be selectively hydrolyzed to the desired monothiocarbonyl compound depending on the choice of conditions. In general the thiocarbonyl at the 4-position of the ring is more susceptible to nucleophilic conditions. It can be converted to the 4-oxo-species (VII) by treatment with aqueous ethanolamine followed by acid hydrolysis. Purification is easily performed by silica gel chromatography or recrystallization.

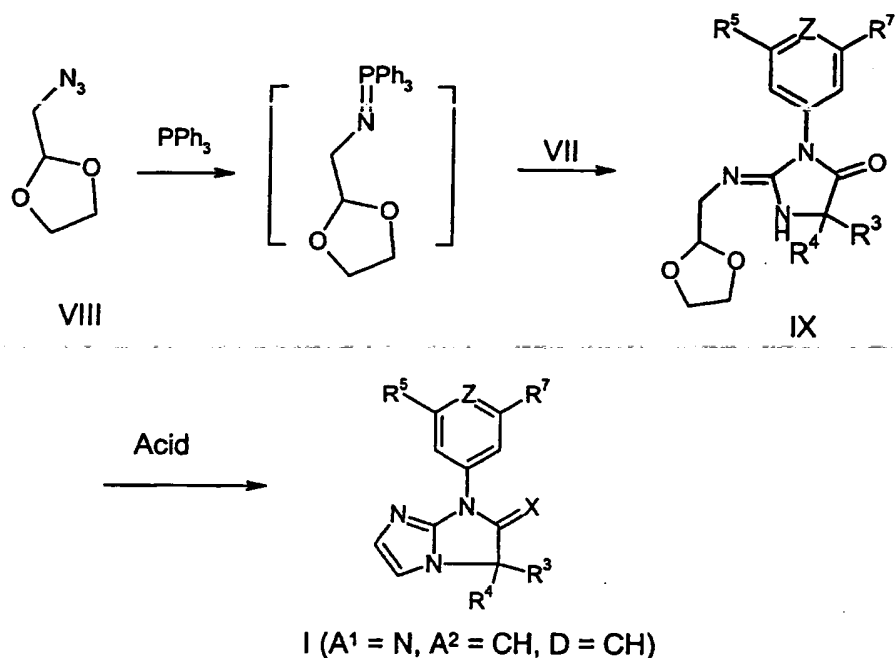
Alternatively, the methyl or ethyl ester of III may be reacted with an aryl thioisocyanate (IV: -NCS instead of -NCO) in a suitable solvent, such as 1,4-dioxane, under an inert atmosphere at about 50-100 °C for about 1 – 24 h to provide VII.

If one uses the racemic III or ester of III, the product (V or VII) is racemic at the asymmetric carbon. By starting with a single enantiomer of III or ester of III, one obtains the single enantiomer of V or VII.

30

Compounds of formula I where  $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$  and  $D = CH$  may be synthesized as illustrated in Scheme II and described below.

Scheme II



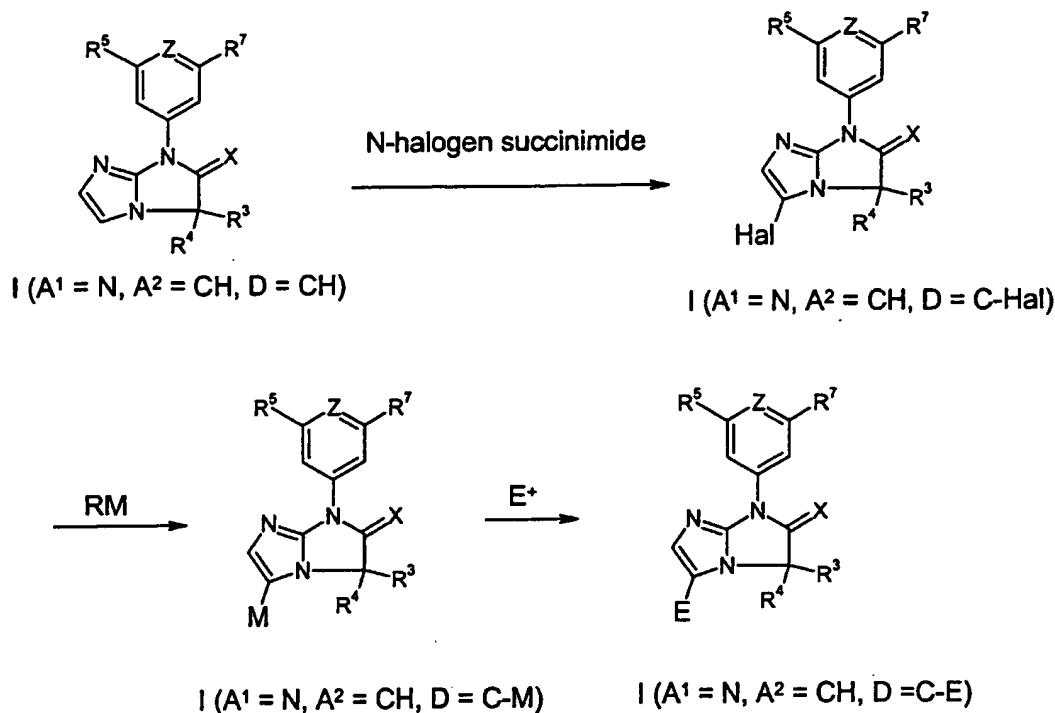
5

Azide VIII is added to a solution of  $PPh_3$  in a suitable solvent such as toluene, under inert atmosphere and allowed to stir at ambient temperature for about 12 – 24 h. The appropriate thiohydantoin VII is then added and the reaction heated under inert atmosphere, preferably in a sealed tube at about 130 – 140 °C for about 1-4 days to provide IX after concentration and purification by silica gel chromatography. An acid, such as trifluoroacetic acid, is added to a solution of IX in a solvent such as dichloroethane and heated under inert atmosphere at about 50 – 100 °C for about 12 – 24 h to provide I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = CH$ ) after standard workup and purification.

15

Analogues of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) where D is a carbon substituted with various groups, such as halogen, CN, CHO, an alkyl group, an alkyl or aryl sulfide, sulfoxide or sulfone, may be prepared as described below and outlined in Scheme III.

Scheme III



5

In Scheme III, M is a metal atom such as Li or Mg, Hal is Cl, Br or I and E is a functional group transferable by an electrophilic reagent and can be, but is not restricted to, Cl, Br, I, CN, alkyl, CHO, SO<sub>2</sub>M, SO<sub>2</sub>R or CO<sub>2</sub>R, where R is alkyl or aryl.

- 10 The desired *N*-halosuccinimide (about 1 mole equivalent) is added in portions to a solution of I (A<sup>1</sup> = N, A<sup>2</sup> = CH, D = CH), in a suitable solvent such as methylene chloride at about -10 °C to ambient temperature, preferably at about 0 °C, and stirred for about 2 to 15 h. Following workup and purification, I (A<sup>1</sup> = N, A<sup>2</sup> = CH, D = C-Cl, C-Br, C-I) is obtained.
- 15 The halogen substituted compound I (A<sup>1</sup> = N, A<sup>2</sup> = CH, D = C-Cl, C-Br, C-I) may be transformed to an organometallic intermediate I (A<sup>1</sup> = N, A<sup>2</sup> = CH, D = C-M, where M is a metal atom, such as Li or Mg) by treatment with an organometallic reagent, such as an

alkyl or aryl lithium or a Grignard reagent. This organometallic intermediate may be reacted with an electrophile, such as an *N*-chloro-, bromo- or iodo- succinimide, tosyl cyanide, an alkyl or aryl sulfonyl chloride, an alkyl or aryl disulfide, an alkyl- or arylthiosulfonate, an alkyl or aryl chloroformate, an alkyl halide, *N,N*-dimethylformamide  
5 or sulfur dioxide, to produce the analog of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) where D is a carbon substituted with various groups, such as Cl, Br, I, CN, an alkyl group, an alkyl or aryl sulfone, an alkyl or aryl sulfide, CHO, or a sulfinate salt. The sulfides may be further oxidized with a reagent, such as potassium peroxymonosulfate, or *m*-chlorobenzoic acid, to provide sulfoxides or sulfones. The sulfinate salts may be further transformed to produce  
10 sulfones and sulfonamides as described below.

More specifically, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) with D = CN may be obtained by treating a solution of the corresponding halide, preferably iodide I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-I), in a solvent such as THF with an alkyl magnesium reagent, such as cyclopentyl  
15 magnesium bromide, at about  $-78$  to  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably about  $-30$  to  $-40^\circ\text{C}$ , under an inert atmosphere, for about 1 to 5 h to generate an organomagnesium species I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-Mg). Tosyl cyanide is then added and the reaction allowed to gradually warm to ambient temperature and to proceed for about 1 to 24 h. Following workup and purification, I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-CN) is obtained.

20 Compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-SO<sub>2</sub>R where R = alkyl or aryl) may be obtained by treating the organomagnesium species I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-Mg) as generated above with an alkyl or aryl sulfonyl chloride. Alternatively, one may add an alkyl- or aryl disulfide, or an alkyl- or arylthiosulfonate (prepared by oxidizing the corresponding  
25 alkyl or aryl disulfide, for example with *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid in a suitable solvent such as methylene chloride) and then heating the reaction at about the reflux temperature of the solvent for about 1 to 3 h to obtain I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ , D = C-SR, where R = alkyl or aryl) after workup and purification. The resulting product may be oxidized to the corresponding sulfoxide or sulfone with a suitable oxidizing agent such as potassium  
30 peroxymonosulfate or *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid.

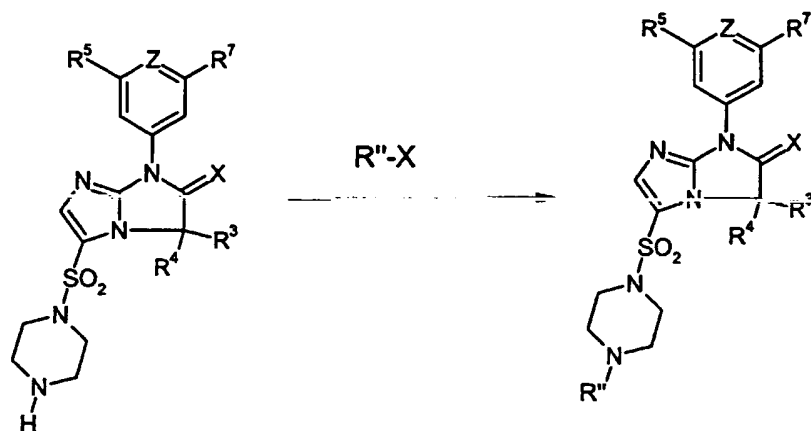
Compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) with  $D = C-CO_2R$ , where R is an alkyl or an aryl group, may be obtained by treating the organomagnesium species as generated above with an appropriate alkyl or aryl chloroformate, in a solvent such as THF, at about  $-20$  to  $-78$  °C, preferably about  $-40$  °C, under an inert atmosphere for about 15 min to 1 h before  
5 allowing the reaction to warm to room temperature over about 30 min to 1 h. Following quenching, for example with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, workup and purification, I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = C-CO_2R$ ) is obtained.

Compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) with  $D = C-CHO$  may be obtained by treating a solution  
10 of the corresponding halide, preferably iodide (I:  $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = C-I$ ), in a solvent such as THF with an alkyl lithium, such as *n*-BuLi at about  $-50$  to  $-120$  °C, preferably about  $-100$  °C, under an inert atmosphere for about 15 min to 1 h. *N,N*-Dimethylformamide is added and the reaction gradually allowed to warm to about  $0$  °C and stirred for about 1 h. Following quenching, for example with aqueous ammonium  
15 chloride, workup and purification, I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = C-CHO$ ) is obtained.

One may also synthesize certain compounds of the invention by treating the organomagnesium intermediate as generated above with sulfur dioxide to generate an intermediate magnesium sulfinatate salt. This intermediate may be treated with alkylating  
20 reagents, such as alkyl halides to produce additional compounds of the formula I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) with  $D = C-SO_2R$  ( $R = \text{alkyl}$ ). The intermediate magnesium sulfinatate salt may also be treated with *N*-chlorosuccinimide to generate the sulfonyl chloride I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = C-SO_2Cl$ ). The sulfonyl chloride can in turn be treated with amines to produce desired sulfonamides I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = C-SO_2NRR'$  where R and R' = a hydrogen  
25 atom, an alkyl or aryl group, or together comprise part of a heterocyclic ring).

Analogous of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) with  $D = C-SO_2NRR'$  where R and R' together comprise part of a heterocyclic ring and where R and/or R' contains a second nitrogen, for example piperazine, can be further substituted on the second nitrogen, for example with acyl, alkyl,  
30 aryl, carbamyl or sulfonyl as described below and outlined in Scheme IV.

Scheme IV



I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = SO_2NRR'$ )  
(where  $NRR'$  is piperazine)

I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = SO_2NRR'$ )  
(where  $NRR'$  is *N*-substituted piperazine)

5

In Scheme IV,  $R''$  is a functional group transferable by an electrophilic reagent and can be, but is not restricted to, an alkyl group,  $COR$ ,  $CONRR'$ ,  $CO_2R$ , or  $SO_2R$ , where  $R$  or  $R'$  is alkyl or aryl.

- 10 The compound bearing the heteroatom can be treated with reagents such as an alkanoyl or aroyl chloride, alkanoyl or aroyl anhydride, alkyl halide, alkyl or aryl sulfonyl chloride or alkyl or aryl isocyanate to produce compounds where I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and  $D$  is a carbon substituted with a sulfonamide which itself is further substituted with various groups such as alkyl or aryl amides, alkyl amines, alkyl or aryl sulfonamides, and alkyl or
- 15 aryl ureas.

More specifically, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where  $D$  is a carbon substituted with a piperazinesulfonamide which itself is further *N*-acylated may be obtained by treating a solution of the corresponding piperazinesulfonamide, in a solvent such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide with an appropriate carboxylic acid, in the presence of a coupling agent, such as polystyrene resin-bound carbodiimide, at about 20 °C for about 2 to 24 h.

20

Following workup and purification, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where D = is a carbon substituted with an acylated piperazinesulfonamide are obtained.

Alternatively, these compounds may be obtained by treating a solution of the  
5 corresponding piperazinesulfonamide, in a solvent such as dichloromethane with an appropriate alkanoyl or aroyl chloride, in the presence of a base, such as triethylamine, at about  $-20$  to  $20^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably about  $0^\circ\text{C}$  for about 15 min to 2 h. Following quenching, for example with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, workup and purification, the desired acylated piperazinesulfonamides are obtained.

10 Compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where D is a carbon substituted with a piperazinesulfonamide which itself participates additionally in an urea linkage may be obtained by treating a solution of the corresponding piperazinesulfonamide in a solvent such as dichloromethane with an appropriate isocyanate, at about  $0$  to  $40^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably  
15 about  $20^\circ\text{C}$  for about 2 to 24 h. Following workup and purification, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where D = is a carbon substituted with an urea functionalized piperazinesulfonamide are obtained.

Alternatively, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where D is a carbon substituted with a  
20 piperazinesulfonamide which itself is further *N*-sulfonylated may be obtained by treating a solution of the corresponding piperazinesulfonamide, in a solvent such as dichloromethane with an appropriate sulfonyl chloride, in the presence of a base, such as triethylamine, at about  $-20$  to  $20^\circ\text{C}$ , preferably about  $0^\circ\text{C}$  for about 15 min to 2 h. Following quenching, for example with aqueous sodium bicarbonate, workup and purification, compounds I ( $A^1$   
25  $= N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ) and where D = is a carbon substituted with a sulfonylated piperazinesulfonamide are obtained.

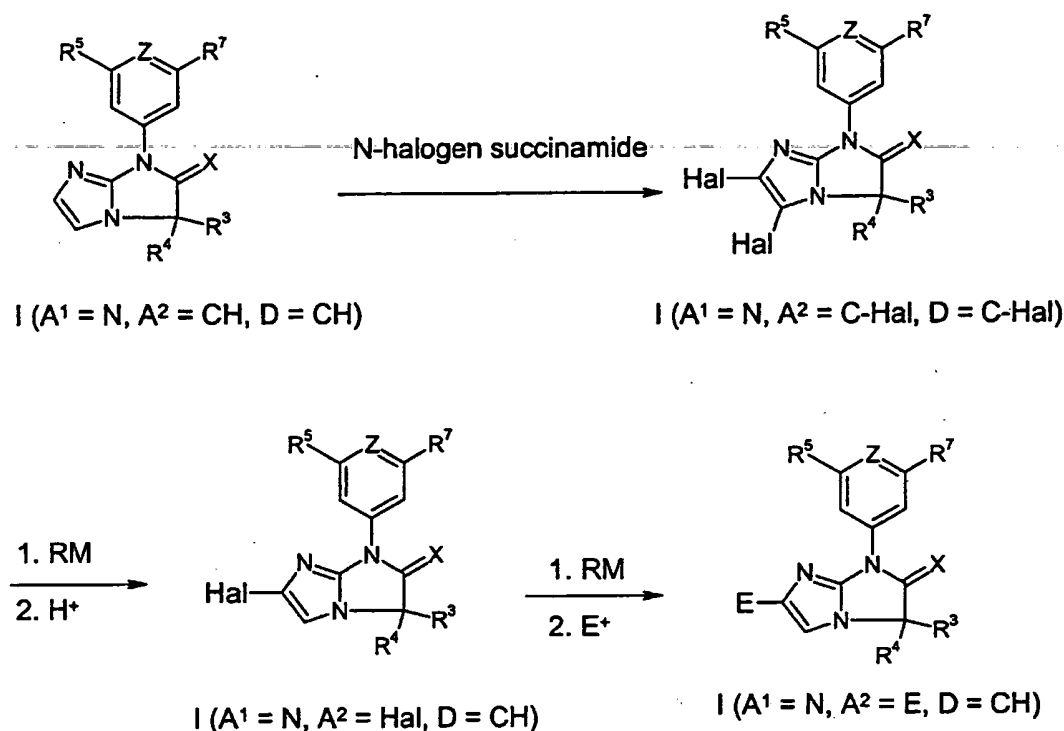
Functional group transformations well known in the art may be employed to modify the substituents on D illustrated above to obtain additional compounds of the invention.

30

Analogs of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $D = CH$ ) where  $A^2$  is a carbon substituted with various groups, such as halogen, CN, CHO, an alkyl group, an alkyl or aryl sulfide, sulfoxide or sulfone, may be prepared as described below and outlined in Scheme V. In Scheme V, M is a metal atom, such as Li or Mg, Hal is Cl, Br or I, and E is an functional group transferable by an

5 electrophilic reagent and can be, but is not restricted to, Cl, Br, I, CN, alkyl, CHO,  $SO_2M$ ,  $SO_2R$  or  $CO_2R$ , where R is alkyl or aryl.

Scheme V



10

The desired N-halosuccinimide (about 2 mole equivalent relative to I) is added in portions to a solution of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = CH$ ,  $D = CH$ ), in a suitable solvent such as methylene chloride at about  $-10^\circ C$  to ambient temperature, preferably at about  $0^\circ C$ , and stirred for

15 about 2 to 15 h. Following workup and purification, I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = D = C-Cl$ ,  $C-Br$  or  $C-I$ ) is obtained.



The compound I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = D = C-Cl$ ,  $C-Br$  or  $C-I$ ) may be treated in a solvent such as THF with an alkyl magnesium bromide, such as cyclopentyl magnesium bromide, at about  $-78$  to  $0^\circ C$ , preferably about  $-30$  to  $-40^\circ C$ , under an inert atmosphere, for about 1 to 5 h. An aqueous acid, such as 1N hydrogen chloride or saturated  $NH_4Cl$  solution, is then added.

5 Following workup and purification, I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = C-Cl$ ,  $C-Br$  or  $C-I$ , and  $D = CH$ ) is obtained.

The halogen substituted compound I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = C-Cl$ ,  $C-Br$  or  $C-I$ , and  $D = CH$ ) may be transformed to an organometallic intermediate I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = C-M$ ,  $D = CH$ , where M

10 is an metal atom, such as Li or Mg) by treatment with an organometallic reagent, such as an alkyl or aryl lithium or magnesium reagent. This organometallic intermediate may be reacted with an electrophile, such as an N-chloro-, bromo- or iodo- succinimide, tosyl cyanide, an alkyl halide, an alkyl or aryl sulfonyl chloride, an alkyl or aryl disulfide, an alkyl- or arylthiosulfonate, an alkyl or aryl chloroformate, *N,N*-dimethylformamide or

15 sulfur dioxide, to produce the analog of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $D = CH$ ) where  $A^2$  is a carbon substituted with various groups, such as Cl, Br, I, CN, an alkyl group, an alkyl or aryl sulfone, an alkyl or aryl sulfide, CHO, or a sulfinate salt. The sulfides may be further oxidized with a reagent, such as potassium peroxymonosulfate, or *m*-chlorobenzoic acid, to sulfoxides or sulfones. The sulfinate salts may also be reacted with an alkylating reagent,

20 such as an alkyl bromide or iodide to produce sulfones. Alternatively, the sulfinate salts may be transformed into the sulfonyl chlorides with a chlorinating reagent, such as NCS. The sulfonyl chlorides may be reacted with an amine to produce sulfonamides I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = C-SO_2NR^1R^2$ ,  $D = CH$ ).

25 More specifically, compounds I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $D = CH$ ) with  $A^2 = C-CN$ ,  $C-SO_2R$  or  $CO_2R$ , where R is alkyl or aryl,  $C-CHO$ ,  $C-SO_2Cl$  and  $C-SO_2NRR'$  may be prepared from the corresponding halide or organomagnesium species as described above (Scheme III) for D.

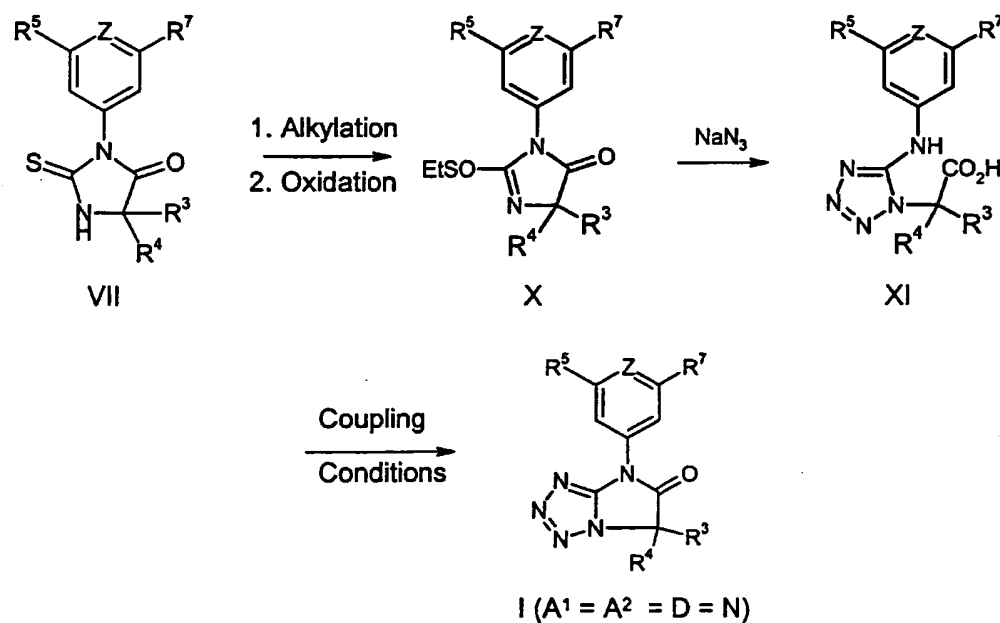
Functional group transformations well known in the art may be employed to modify the

30 substituents on  $A^2$  illustrated above to obtain additional compounds of the invention.

Functional group transformations also allow the derivatization of  $R^4$ . In particular, when  $R^4$  is a brominated or iodinated benzyl group, these halogens can often be replaced with aryl groups by techniques known in the art, for example by treating a solution of the halogenated benzyl group, with an organometallic reagent such as an aryl boronate, boronic acid or stannane, in a solvent such as a mixture of toluene and ethanol, in the presence of a base, such as aqueous sodium carbonate, with a metal catalyst, such as  $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ , at about 75 to 110 °C, preferably about 85 °C for about 2 to 24 h. Following workup and purification, I ( $R^4 = CH_2C_6H_4Ar$ ) is obtained, where Ar can be, but is not limited to, furyl, phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl and thiophenyl.

Compounds of formula I with  $A^1 = A^2 = D = N$  may be prepared as illustrated in Scheme VI and described below.

Scheme VI

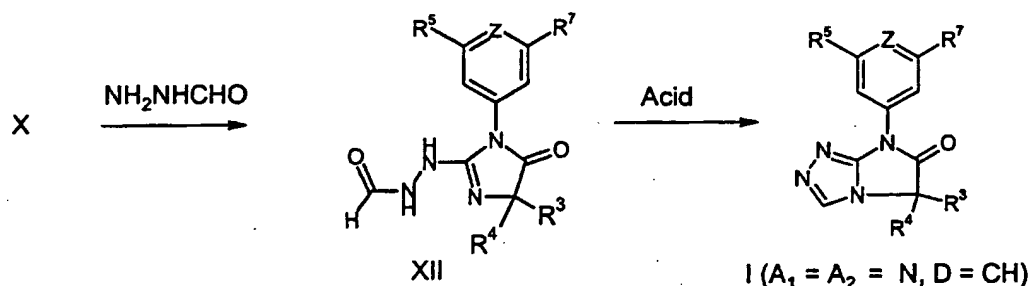


Intermediate VII is treated with an alkylating agent such as diethyl sulfate, in a suitable solvent such as aqueous base and THF. After workup and purification, the intermediate is

treated with a suitable oxidizing agent such as potassium peroxymonosulfate to give  
 sulfoxide X. A solution of X is then treated with  $\text{NaN}_3$  at ambient temperature for about  
 12-24 h. Upon workup and purification, carboxylic acid XI is obtained. Intermediate XI  
 is then reacted under standard peptide coupling conditions, for example treatment with 1-  
 5 (3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) and 1-  
 hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt) and a base, such as diisopropylethylamine, in a suitable  
 solvent such as DMF for about 5 to 24 h at ambient temperature. Following workup and  
 purification, I ( $A^1 = A^2 = D = N$ ) is obtained.

- 10 Compounds of formula I where  $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = N$ , and  $D = \text{CH}$  may be prepared as  
 illustrated in Scheme VII and described below.

Scheme VII



Intermediate X (Scheme VI) is treated with formic hydrazide in a suitable solvent such as  
 DMSO, under an inert atmosphere at about 50 to 100 °C for about 5 to 24 h to provide XII  
 after workup and purification. Intermediate XII is treated with a catalytic amount of an  
 20 acid, such as p-toluenesulfonic acid in a suitable solvent, such as toluene. Molecular  
 sieves or a trap to collect water formed in the reaction may be employed. The reaction is  
 heated at reflux temperature for about 3 to 12 h. The desired compound of formula I ( $A^1 =$   
 $N$ ,  $A^2 = N$ , and  $D = \text{CH}$ ) is obtained following purification.

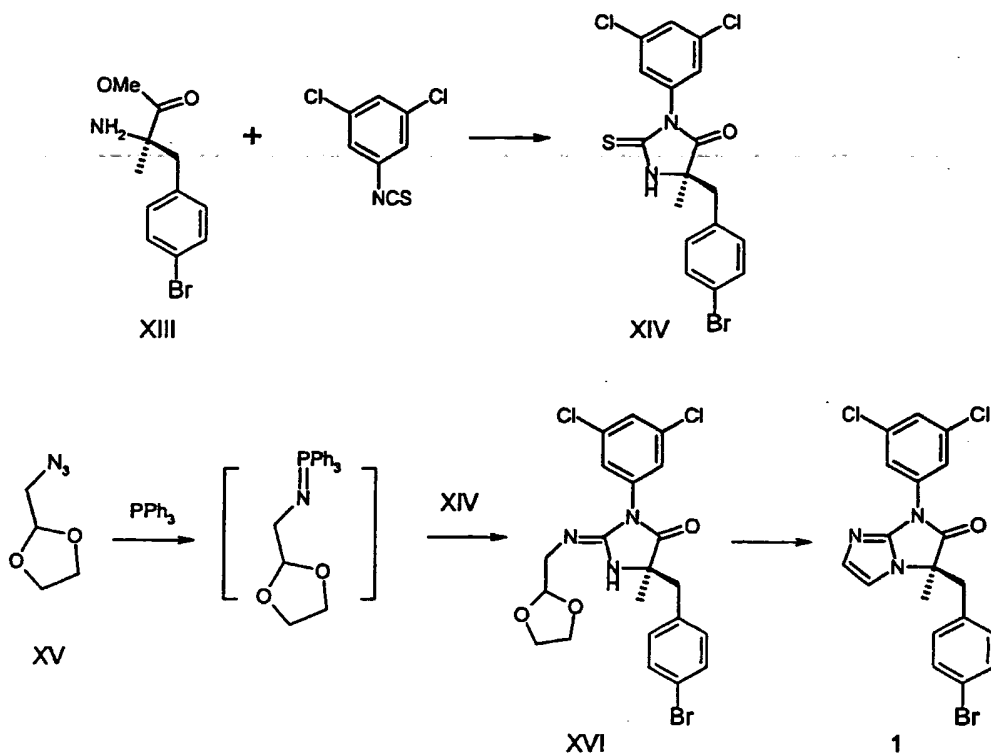
- 25 Analogs of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = N$ ) where  $D = \text{C}$  substituted with various groups may be  
 prepared as described above for analogs of I ( $A^1 = N$ ,  $A^2 = \text{CH}$ ).

The invention is further described by the following synthetic examples.

### Synthetic Examples

5

#### Example 1



10

A solution of amino-ester XIII and 3,5-dichlorophenylisothiocyanate (1:1 molar ratio) in 1,4-dioxane was heated at 90 °C under  $\text{N}_2$  for 10 h. The mixture was concentrated to give the thiohydantoin derivative XIV. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

15

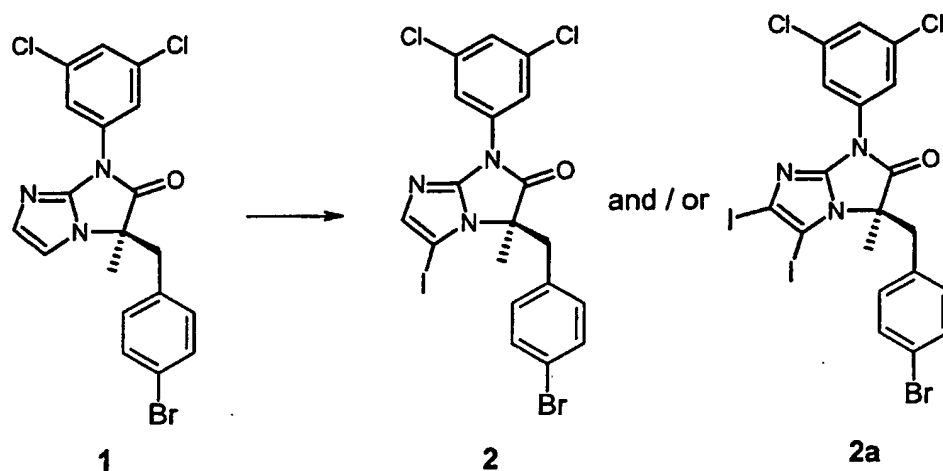
To a solution of  $\text{PPh}_3$  (9.0 mmol) in toluene (20 mL) under  $\text{N}_2$  was added azide XV (9.0 mmol). After stirring at room temperature overnight, thiohydantoin XIV (4.5 mmol) was added. The mixture was sealed under  $\text{N}_2$  in a pressure tube and heated at 130-140 °C for 3-4 days, concentrated and purified by silica gel chromatography to give the product XVI.

5 The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

To a solution of XVI in dichloroethane was added trifluoroacetic acid (TFA, 5-6 eq). The mixture was heated under  $\text{N}_2$  at 90 °C overnight. The residue was taken up in EtOAc, washed with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated. The residue was  
10 purified by silica gel chromatography to give the title compound 1, m.p. 36–37.5 °C. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

### Example 2

15



To a solution of compound 1 (1.82 g, 4.04 mmol), in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (20 mL), cooled to 0 °C was  
20 added in small portions *N*-iodosuccinimide (1.43 g, 6.04 mmol). Pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate (100 mg, 0.40 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 3 h, during which, additional *N*-iodosuccinimide (400 mg, 1.68 mmol) was added to

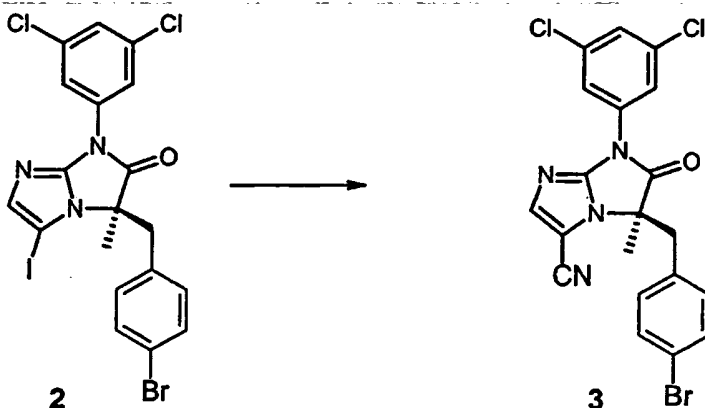
complete the reaction. The mixture was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , washed with 10%  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3$  solution, dried and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography to give a mixture of the title compounds **2** (1.86 g) and **2a** (0.53 g). The products were characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

5

Diiodide **2a** may also be produced from **1** as the only product by using more than 2 mole equivalents of *N*-iodosuccinimide in the same procedure as described above.

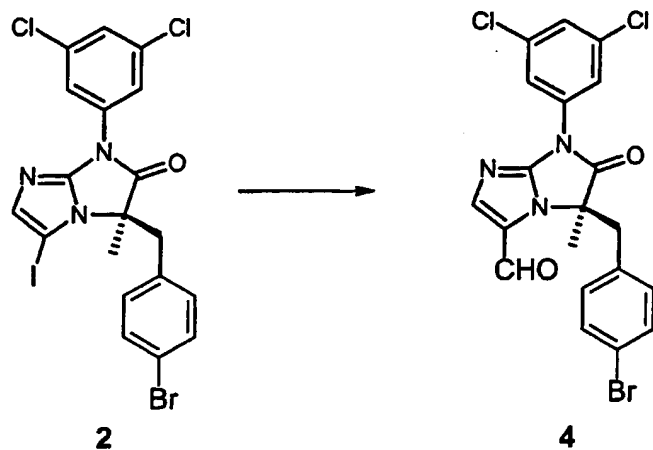
10

### Example 3



A solution of compound **2** (33 mg, 0.0572 mmol) in THF was treated with a 2.0 M solution of cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (57  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.114 mmol) at  $-30^\circ\text{C}$  under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^\circ\text{C}$  for 2 h before a solution of tosylcyanide (70 mg, 0.367 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^\circ\text{C}$  for 1 h then at room temperature overnight. The reaction was quenched with a saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . Extraction with EtOAc followed by silica gel chromatography gave compound **3** as a foam (9.5 mg, 35%). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

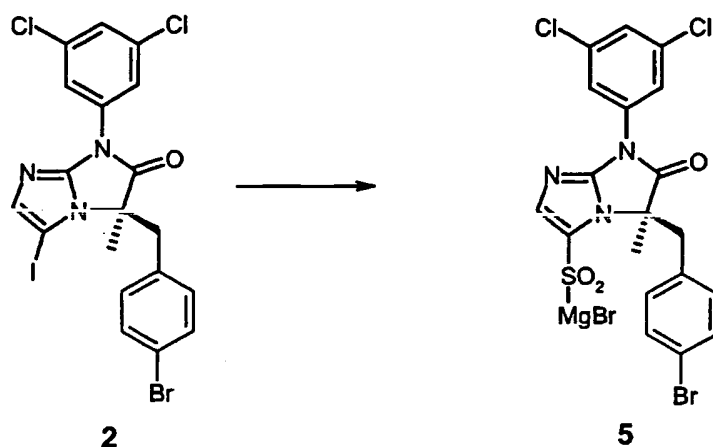
20

Example 4

5

A solution of compound 2 (32 mg, 0.055 mmol) in THF was treated with *n*-BuLi (44  $\mu$ L, 1.5 M, 0.067 mmol) at  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$  under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred at  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 min before DMF (50  $\mu$ L) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 min then  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 h before a saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution (1 mL) was added. Extraction with EtOAc followed by silica gel chromatography gave compound 4 as an oil (3.0 mg, 11%). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

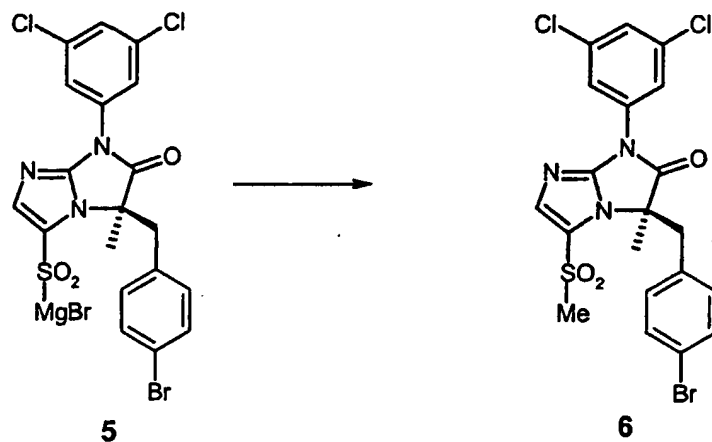
10

Example 5

- 5 A solution of compound 2 (2.5 g, 4.33 mmol) in 25 mL of THF was treated with cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (2.6 mL, 2 M, 5.2 mmol) at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  under argon. The mixture was stirred at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 40 min and then SO<sub>2</sub> was bubbled in over 1 min. The mixture was stirred at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 min then at room temperature for 1 h before being concentrated twice under vacuum from dry THF to produce the solid magnesium salt 5.

10



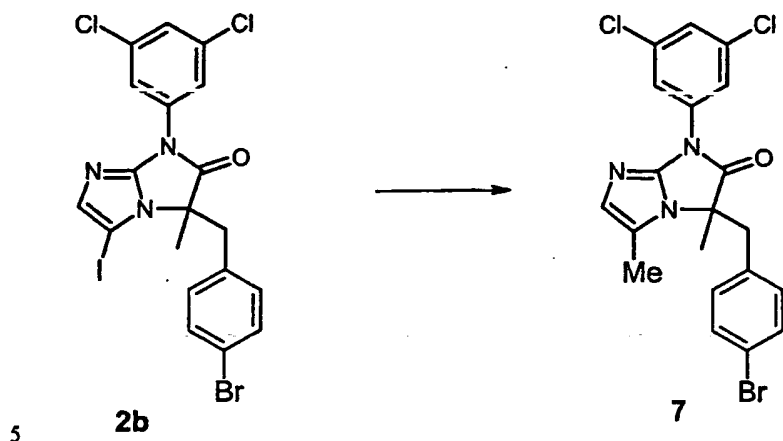
Example 6

5

The magnesium salt **5** (1.00 g, 1.62 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL of dry DMF and treated with MeI (0.5 mL, 8 mmol) at room temperature for 1.5 h. It was then heated to between 40 and 50 °C for 1 h to complete the reaction. The reaction mixture was diluted with water to stop the reaction. Extraction with EtOAc followed by silica gel chromatography gave **6** (3.66 g, 66%). Mp = 92 –93 °C. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

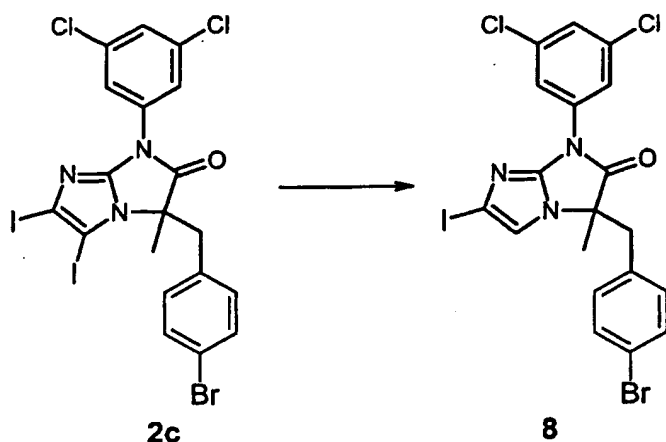
10

### Example 7



For this example, the racemic iodide **2b** was used as the starting material. Compound **2b** was prepared by the same procedure as compound **2**, using racemic **1**.

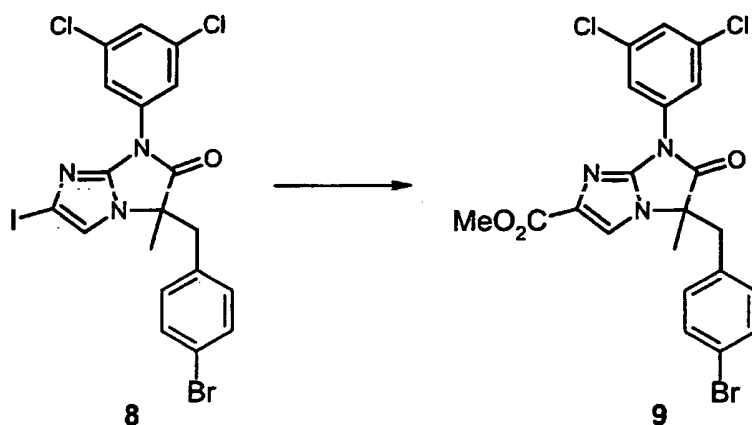
To a solution of anhydrous LiCl (10.0 mg, 0.236 mmol) and CuCN (10.5 mg, 0.117 mmol) in THF (0.2 mL), cooled at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added  $\text{CH}_3\text{MgBr}$  (1.4 M in THF, 0.21 mL, 0.294 mmol) under  $\text{N}_2$ . The solution was stirred at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 min. A solution of compound **2b** (34 mg, 0.059 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 2 h and then at room temperature overnight before being quenched with saturated aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated. The residue was purified via preparative thin layer chromatography (prep-TLC) to give 2 mg (yield: 6%) of **7**. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Example 8

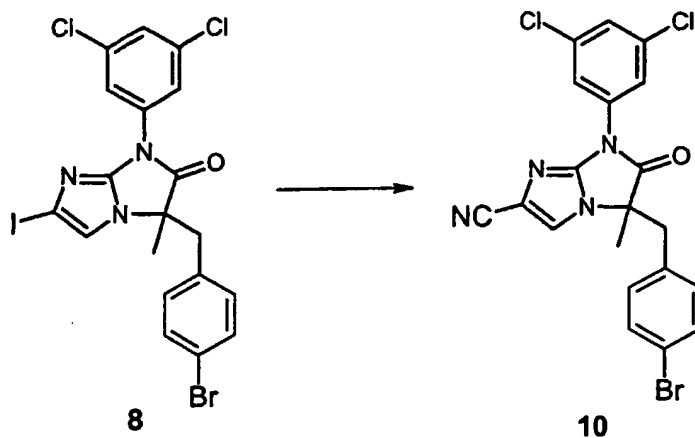
5

For this example, the racemic diiodide **2c** was used as the starting material. Compound **2c** was prepared by the same procedure as compound **2a**, using racemic **1**.

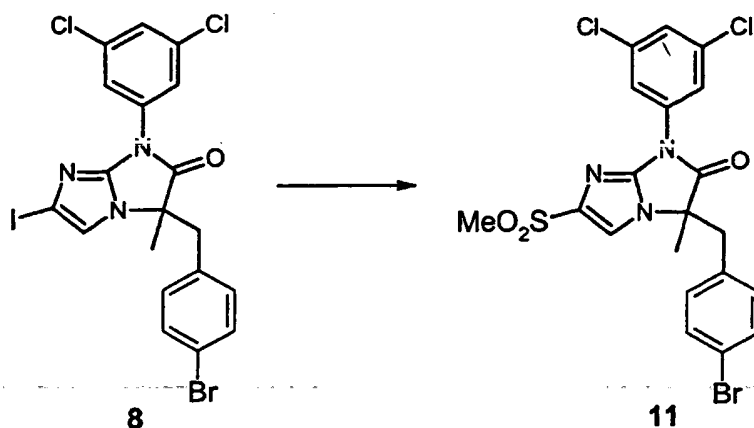
To a solution of compound **2c** (766 mg, 1.09 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added  
10 cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (2.0 M in ether, 1.36 mL, 2.72 mmol) under nitrogen. The  
solution was stirred at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1.5 h before a saturated aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution was  
added. The mixture was warmed to room temperature and extracted with EtOAc. The  
organic layer was dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica  
gel chromatography to give the iodide **8**. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and  
15 mass spectroscopy.

Example 9(9. BIRT0938XX)

- 5 To a solution of the iodide **8** (113 mg, 0.196 mmol) in THF (1 mL) at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (2.0 M in ether, 0.293 mL, 0.586 mmol) under nitrogen. The solution was stirred at  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 90 min before methyl chloroformate (0.1 mL, 1.47 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-35^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 30 min and then at room temperature for 1 h before a saturated aqueous solution of  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  was added. The mixture
- 10 was extracted with EtOAc and the organic layer was dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography to give the product **9** (16 mg). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Example 10(10. BIRT0937XX)

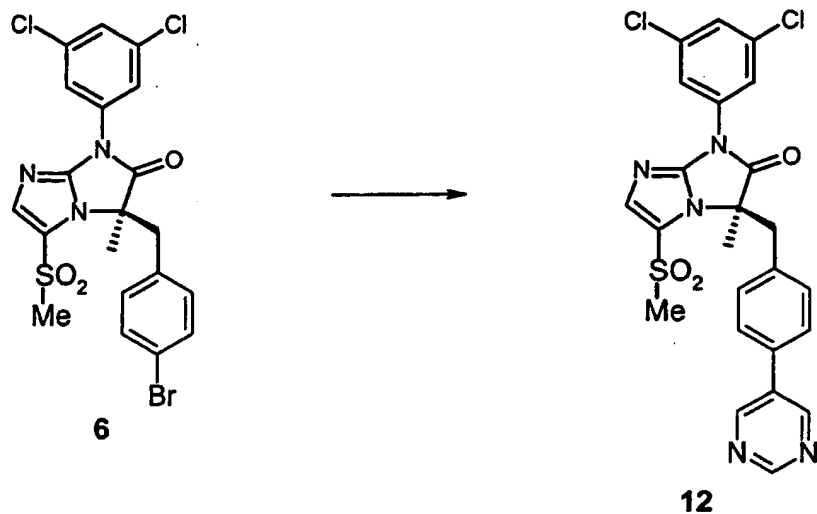
5 A solution of the iodide **8** (32 mg, 0.055 mmol) in THF (0.8 mL) was treated  
cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (2.0 M in ether, 83  $\mu$ L, 0.166 mmol) at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  under  
nitrogen. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 h before a solution of tosylcyanide (53  
mg, 0.28 mmol) in THF (0.2 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 10  
10 min, then at room temperature for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$   
solution at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Extraction with EtOAc followed by silica gel chromatography gave  
compound **10** as a foam (10 mg). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass  
spectroscopy.

Example 11

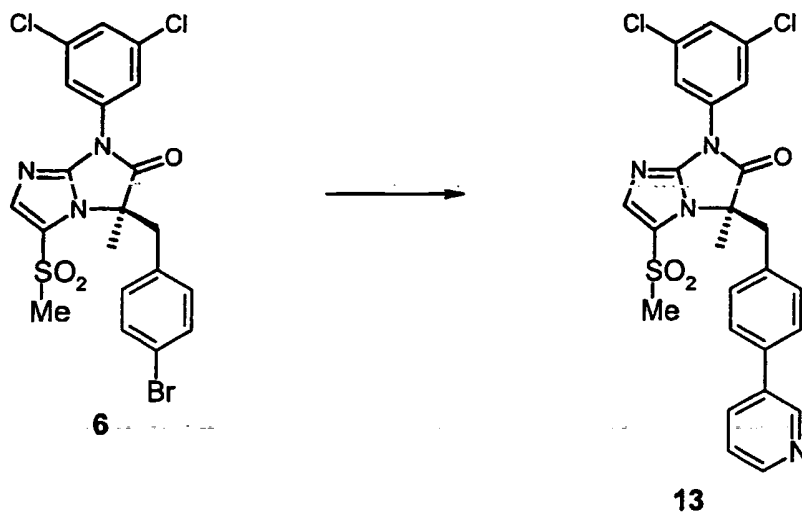
5

A solution of the iodide **8** (88 mg, 0.152 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was treated with cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (2.0 M in ether, 230  $\mu$ L, 0.46 mmol) at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 h before methanesulfonyl chloride (60  $\mu$ L, 0.775 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 h then at room

10 temperature for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Extraction with EtOAc followed by silica gel chromatography gave compound **11** (18 mg, 35%). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

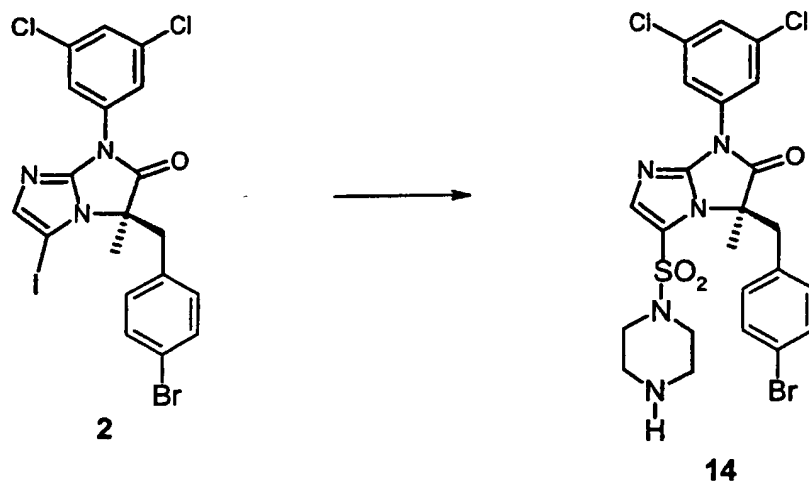
Example 12

- 5 A solution of compound 6 (0.1 g, 0.19 mmol) in 2 mL of toluene was treated with 5-trimethylstannylpyrimidine (0.07 g, 0.28 mmol) and Pd (PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (22 mg, 0.02 mmol) and the mixture was heated to reflux overnight. Upon cooling, the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation and the residue was purified by preparative TLC. This produced 50.4 mg of compound 12. Mp = 139 – 141 °C. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and
- 10 mass spectroscopy.

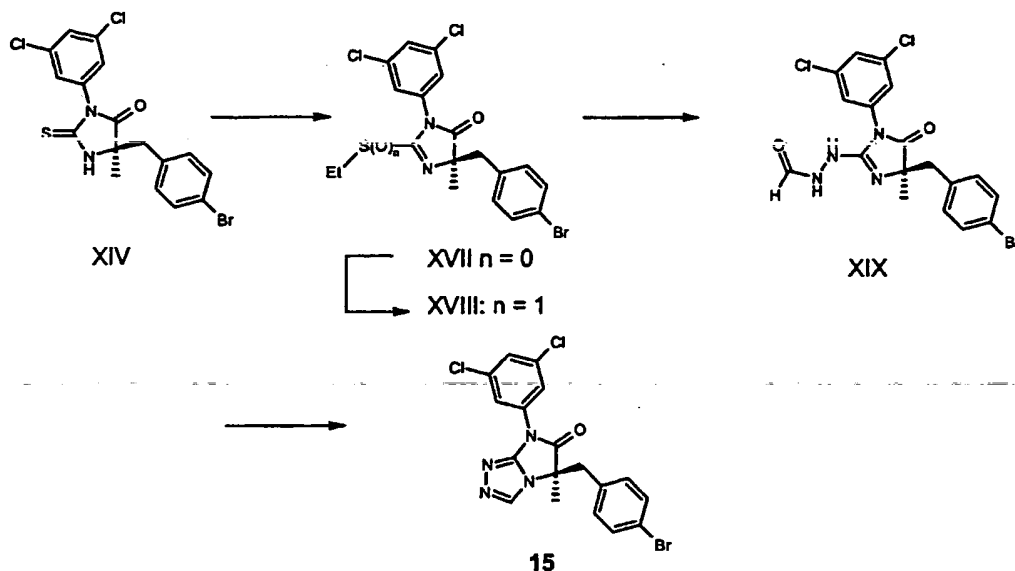
Example 13

- 5 A solution of compound 6 (90 mg, 0.17 mmol) in 2 mL of toluene, 1 mL of EtOH and 0.8 mL of 2 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> was treated with pyridine-3-boronic acid (37 mg, 0.22 mmol) and Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (20 mg, 0.02 mmol). The mixture was heated to reflux 1.5 h. Upon cooling, the solvent was removed by rotary evaporation and the residue was purified by silica gel chromatography. This produced 50.4 mg of compound 13. Mp = 80 – 82 °C. The product
- 10 was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.



Example 14

- 5 A solution of compound **2** (100 mg, 0.17 mmol) in 2.5 mL of THF was treated with cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (0.14 mL, 2 M in ether, 0.28 mmol) at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  under argon. The mixture was stirred at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 40 min and then  $\text{SO}_2$  was bubbled in over 1 min. The mixture was stirred at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 15 min then at room temperature for 1 h and finally at  $45^{\circ}\text{C}$  before being concentrated twice under vacuum from dry THF to produce
- 10 the solid magnesium salt. The magnesium salt was treated with a mixture of triethylamine (0.035 mL, 0.36 mmol) and *N*-chlorosuccinimide (71 mg, 0.53 mmol). After 15 min, an excess of piperazine (119 mg, 1.38 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 3 h. The mixture was then quenched by the addition of a solution of saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  and extracted into EtOAc. Upon concentration, the crude product was
- 15 purified using preparative TLC to yield compound **14** (26 mg) as an oil. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Example 15

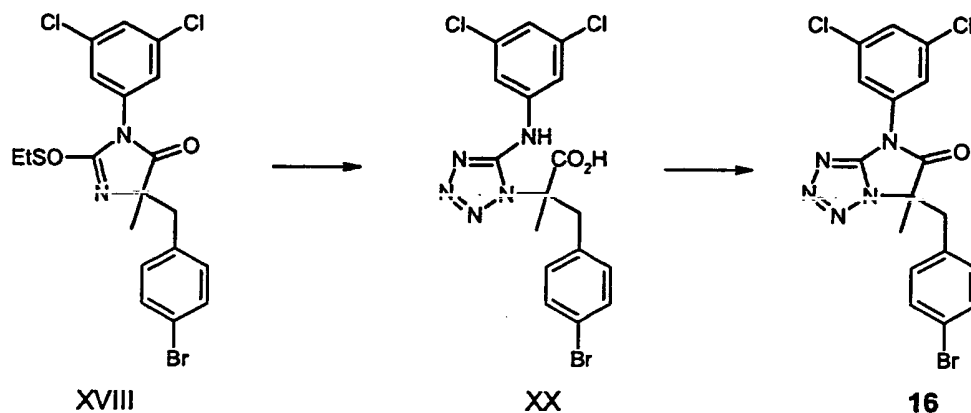
2.00 mL of 1 N NaOH was added to a solution of 0.85 g (1.91 mmol) of XIV and 0.30 mL (0.35 g, 2.30 mmol) of diethyl sulfate in 8.5 mL of THF stirring in an ice-bath. After 10 min in the cold, the reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred 3.5 h. Aqueous ammonium chloride was added and the reaction extracted with EtOAc, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , and concentrated in vacuo to give an oil (0.98 g). Flash chromatography on silica gel afforded 0.77 g (85%) of XVII as clear oil. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

A solution of 0.69 g (1.13 mmol) of potassium peroxymonosulfate in 2.5 mL of  $4 \times 10^{-4}$  M EDTA was added to a stirred suspension of 0.76 g (1.61 mmol) of XVII and 0.68 g (8.05 mmol) of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  in 7.5 mL acetone and 2.5 mL  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . After stirring 5 h, the reaction was diluted with EtOAc and washed with saturated aqueous  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_3$  and brine. The combined aqueous phases were extracted with EtOAc and the combined organic phases were dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and concentrated in vacuo to give 0.82 g of XVIII as a clear oil. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

To this oil was added 0.48 g (8.05 mmol) of formic hydrazide and 3.8 mL of dry DMSO and the reaction was heated at 60 °C under Ar for 10 h. Water was added giving a white precipitate which was extracted into EtOAc, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated in vacuo to 0.72 g of solid product. This was flash chromatographed on silica  
5 gel to give 0.31 g (41%) of XIX as a white solid.

A mixture of 0.15 g (0.319 mmol) of XIX and 15 mg of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid and 0.30 g of 4Å molecular sieves in 3 mL of toluene was refluxed 5.5 h. The reaction was applied directly to a silica gel column and was purified via flash chromatography, to afford 0.12 g  
10 (82%) of 15 as a yellow foamy resin. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

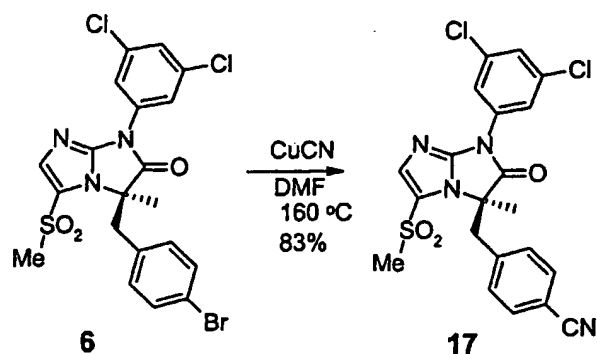
### Example 16



5 A solution of XVIII (Example 15) (130 mg, 0.266 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was treated with  $\text{NaN}_3$  (140 mg, 2.15 mmol) at room temperature for 20 h. The mixture was diluted with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography to give compound XX (80 mg, 64%). The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

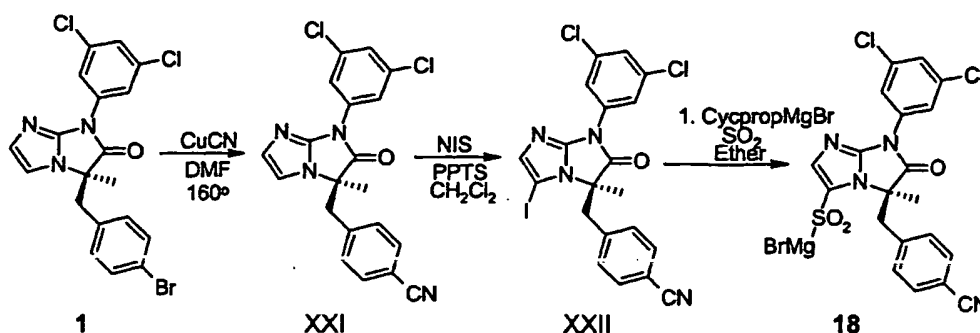
10

To a solution of XX (28 mg, 0.060 mmol) in DMF (0.5 mL) was added HOBT (16 mg, 0.118 mmol) and EDC (23 mg, 0.120 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 h before diisopropylethylamine (31 L, 0.18 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 h, diluted with water, and extracted with methylene chloride. The organic layer was dried, concentrated and purified by silica gel chromatography to give 16 (15 mg, 56 %). The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Example 17

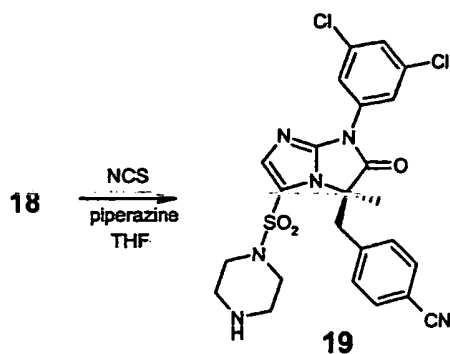
- 5 A mixture of 375 mg (0.709 mmol) of compound 6 and 70 mg (0.779 mmol) copper (I) cyanide in 1.5 mL was stirred in dry DMF and heated for 4 h at 160 °C under Ar. After cooling, water and EtOAc were added and the reaction was filtered, the solids were washed with EtOAc, to afford 90 mg of a green solid. The filtrate was extracted with EtOAc, washed with water, dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure to 335 mg of resin.
- 10 The solids were suspended in 2 mL EtOAc and stirred overnight with 16 L SOCl<sub>2</sub>. H<sub>2</sub>O and EtOAc were added, the reaction was filtered and the filtrate extracted with EtOAc, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and dried, and then was concentrated under reduced pressure. The combined crude products were purified via flash chromatography to afford 234 mg (69%) of compound 17 as a white resin, after drying under vacuum at 60 °C. The product was
- 15 characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

## Example 18



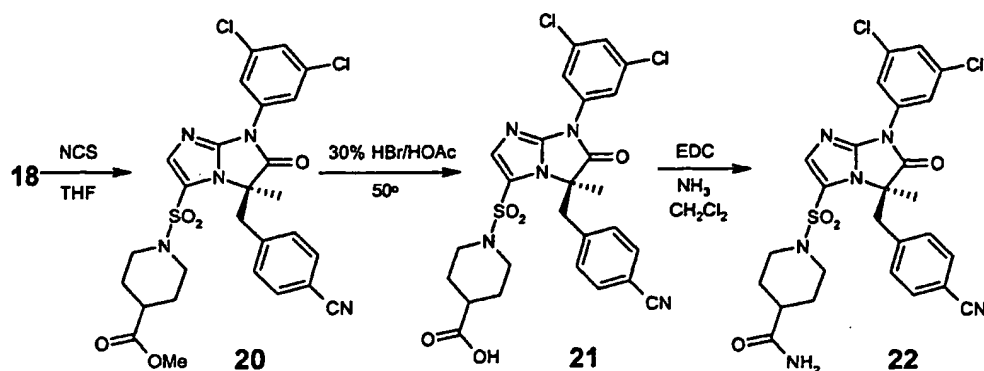
- A mixture of 2.50 g (5.54 mmol) of compound 1 and 650 mg (7.20 mmol) of copper (I) cyanide in 8 mL of dry DMF was stirred and heated 5 h at 160° under Ar. After cooling,
- 5 the mixture was poured into water and EtOAc was added and the reaction was filtered, and the solids were washed with EtOAc, to afford 1.82 g of grey solid. The filtrate was separated and the organic phase washed with H<sub>2</sub>O and concentrated under reduced pressure to give 1.35 g of an oil. The grey solids (1.4 g) were refluxed with 0.27 mL SOCl<sub>2</sub> in 15 mL EtOAc for 0.5 h. After cooling, H<sub>2</sub>O and EtOAc were added, the reaction was filtered
- 10 and the solids were washed with EtOAc. The filtrate was extracted with EtOAc, the organic layer was dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude products were combined and purified via flash chromatography to 890 mg (36%) of unreacted 1, 960 mg (46%) of XXI, as well as 310 of mixed fractions.
- 15 *N*-iodosuccinimide (580 mg, 0.256 mmol) was added to a solution of 960 mg (2.44 mmol) of XXI and 61 mg (0.244 mmol) of pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate in 10 mL methylene chloride at 0 °C. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and was stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, dried and concentrated under
- 20 reduced pressure. The 310 mg of mixed fraction were treated similarly as described above. After isolation, the two residues were combined and purified via flash chromatography to afford 1.08 g (64%) of compound XXII as a resin. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

A solution of 2 M cyclopentylmagnesium bromide (1.24 mL, 2.48 mmol) in Et<sub>2</sub>O was added to a solution of 1.08 g (2.06 mmol) of XXII in 20 mL dry Et<sub>2</sub>O at -50° C, resulting in a white suspension. The reaction was stirred for 15 min at -50° C and then SO<sub>2</sub> was bubbled in for 2 min. The reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 15 min at that  
5 temperature, and then was stirred at room temp for 1 h. The reaction was filtered, the solids washed with Et<sub>2</sub>O, and dried under vacuum for 0.5 h at room temperature to give 1.44 g of compound 18 as a beige solid.

Example 19

- 5 To a stirred solution of 177 mg (1.33 mmol) *N*-chlorosuccinimide in 10 mL dry THF, was added 500 mg (0.709 mmol) of **18** giving a yellow solution that was stirred 10 min. Piperazine (760 mg, 8.86 mmol) was added giving a pale suspension that was stirred 0.5 h. The reaction was filtered, the filtrate washed successively with water and 2N NaOH was dried, and concentrated under reduced pressure. Purification of the residue via flash
- 10 chromatography afforded 225 mg (58%) of **19**. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.



Examples 20-22

5

Example 20

To a stirred solution of 71 mg (0.532 mmol) *N*-chlorosuccinimide in 4 mL dry THF, was added 200 mg (0.283) of 18 giving a yellow solution that was stirred 10 min. Methyl isonipecotrate (479 mL, 3.54 mmol) was added giving a beige suspension that was stirred 0.5 h. The reaction was filtered, the filtrate washed successively with water then 2N NaOH, was dried and then was concentrated under reduced pressure. This residue was purified via preparative TLC to give 87 mg (51%) of 20. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

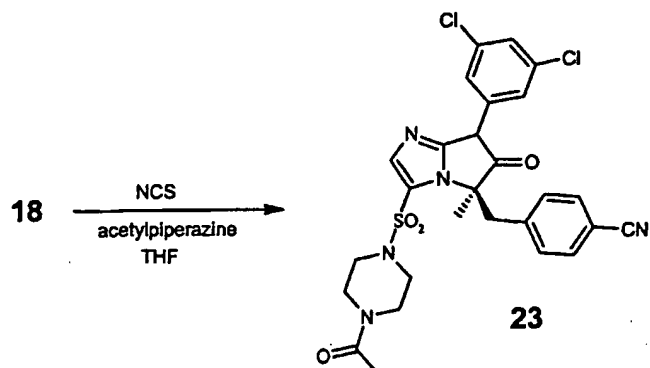
15

Example 21

A stirred solution of 70 mg of 20 in 0.35 mL 30% HBr in acetic acid was stirred 3.5 h at 50° C. Water was added, the reaction was filtered and the solids were washed with H<sub>2</sub>O. The solids were dissolved in alcohol, precipitated with water and filtered, and then were dried under vacuum at 50° C to give 43 mg of a beige powder. The aqueous filtrates were extracted with EtOAc to afford another 17 mg, to yield a total of 60 mg (88%) of 21. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy

Example 22

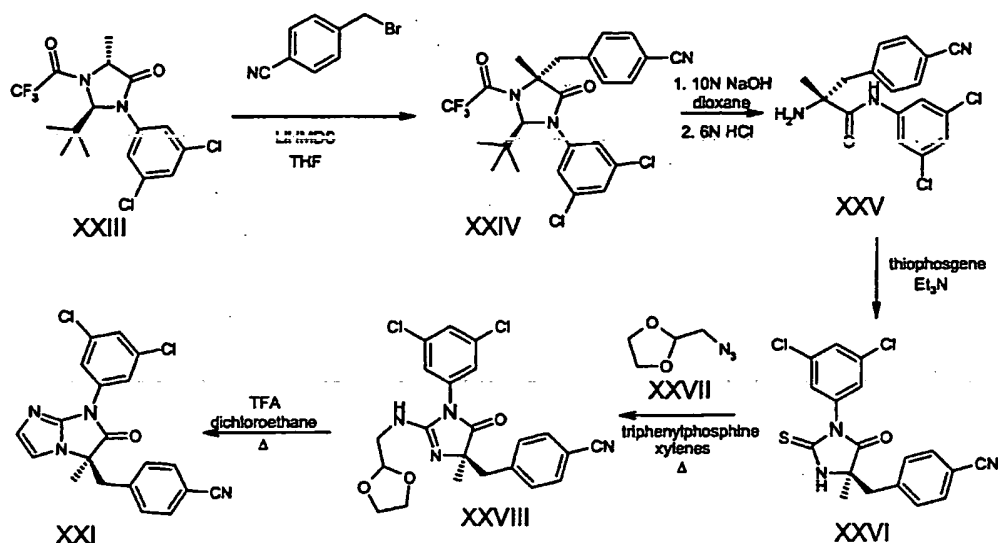
A solution of 13 mg (0.069 mmol) of 1-[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) and 34 mg (0.058 mmol) of **21** in 1 mL CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> was stirred for 0.5 h  
5 in at 0° C. Ammonia gas was bubbled in over 1 min and stirred for 15 min at 0° C and then  
at room temperature for 7.5 h. An additional 13 mg of EDC was added to the reaction,  
which was then saturated with NH<sub>3</sub>, sealed and the was allowed to stir overnight. The  
reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness under reduced pressure, and the residue was  
purified via preparative TLC to afford 13 mg (38%) of **22** as a resin. The product was  
10 characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Example 23

A stirred solution of 27 mg (0.201 mmol) of *N*-chlorosuccinimide and 76 mg (0.107 mmol) assuming 80% purity) of **18** in 2 mL dry THF was stirred for 5 min at room temperature. *N*-Acetylpiperazine (86 mg, 0.67 mmol) was added, and the resulting white suspension was stirred for 1 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, filtered and the filtrate was successively washed with 2N HCl, 2N NaOH and H<sub>2</sub>O, was dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to give 33.5 mg (53%) of **23**. The product was characterized by <sup>1</sup>H NMR and mass spectroscopy.

**Example 24**

This Example describes an alternate synthesis of intermediate XXI of Example 18



5

A solution of 15.1 mL (0.0151 mol) of 1 M lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in THF was added to 5.00 g (0.0126 mol) of XXIII in 50 mL dry tetrahydrofuran at  $-10^\circ\text{C}$ , and the orange solution was stirred for 0.5 h. A mixture of 2.96 g (0.151 mol) 4-bromobenzonitrile in 15 mL THF was added dropwise and the resulting suspension was stirred for 10 5 h between  $-10$  and  $0^\circ\text{C}$ . Aqueous ammonium chloride was added, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ether. The organic layer was dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via flash chromatography and subsequently recrystallized from  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ -pet ether to afford 5.04 g (78%) of a white solid. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

15

A mixture of 5.00 g (9.67 mmol) of XXIV and 5.78 mL (14.6 mmol) of 40% benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 1.95 mL 10 N sodium hydroxide in 25 mL of 1,4-dioxane was stirred at room temperature for 15 h, then was heated at  $40^\circ\text{C}$  for 1 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, then 16.3 mL (96.7 mmol) of 6 N HCl 20 was added, and the mixture was allowed to stir overnight. A solution of saturated aqueous

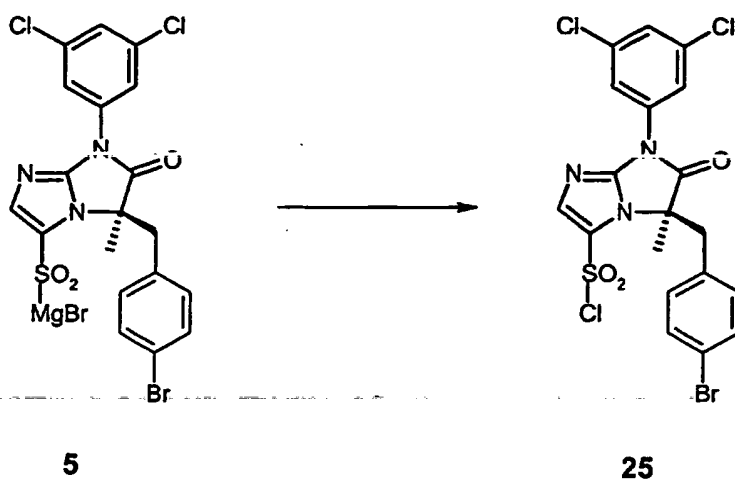
$\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried and concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified via flash chromatography to afford 2.78 g (82%) of XXV as an oil. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

5

Thiophosgene (0.723 mL, 9.48 mmol) was added to a solution of 2.75 g (7.90 mmol) XXV in 28 mL  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , resulting in an orange solution. Triethylamine (4.40 mL, 31.6 mmol) was added and the dark solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and was stirred overnight. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with saturated aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$ , re-extracted 2X EtOAc, then was dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via flash chromatography to afford 1.35 g recovered impure XXV as well as 1.08 g impure XXVI. The recovered XXV was subjected to reaction conditions similar to that above, and after isolation and purification yielded an additional 0.28 g of impure XXVI. The two samples were combined and purified again via flash chromatography, to afford 0.92 g of pure compound XXVI. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

Triphenylphosphine (1.18 g, 4.51 mmol) was added portionwise to a solution of 580 mg (4.51 mmol) of XXVII in 10 mL of xylenes and was stirred for 2 h at room temperature. A solution of 880 mg (2.25 mmol) of XXVI in 2 mL of xylenes was added and the reaction was heated to reflux for 3 days and then was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via flash chromatography to afford 420 mg of impure XXVI, and 290 mg of impure XXVIII contaminated with triphenylphosphine oxide. The sample of XXVIII was treated with 0.49 mL (6.3 mmol) trifluoroacetic acid in 4 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane in a pressure tube, purged with Ar, and heated at  $110^\circ\text{C}$  overnight. The reaction was then treated with saturated aqueous  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , extracted with ether, then dried and concentrated under reduced pressure. The 420 mg of impure XXVI was treated under conditions similar to that described above. After isolation, both residues were combined and were purified via flash chromatography to afford 120 mg (13%) of XXI as an oil. The product was characterized by  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and mass spectroscopy.

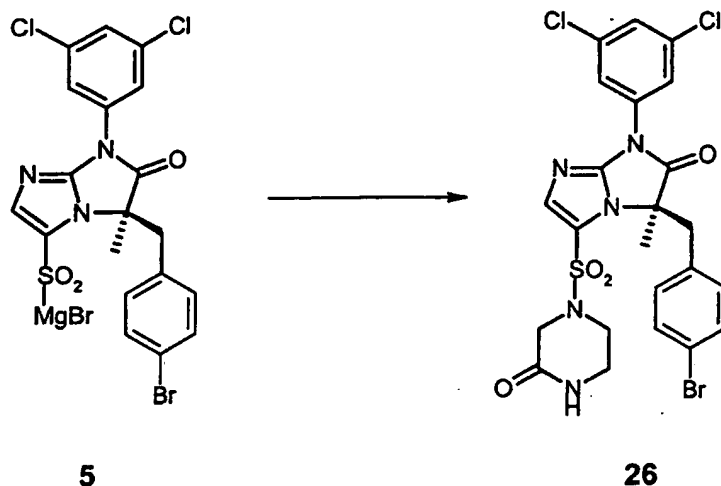
30

Example 25

5

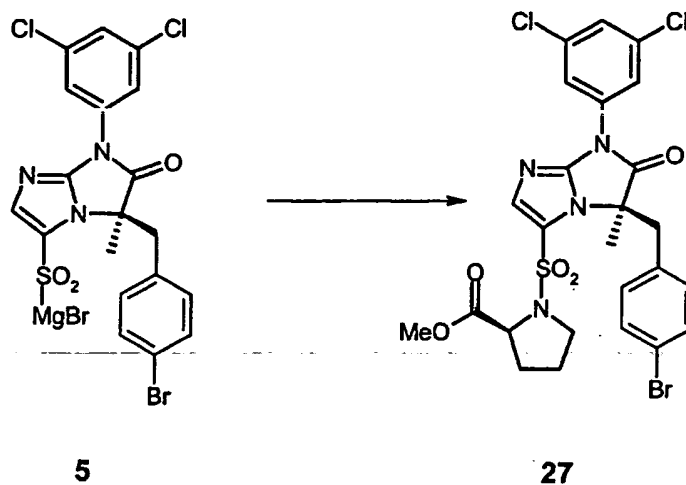
To a stirred solution of magnesium salt **5** (2.61 g, 4.22 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added *N*-chlorosuccinimide (0.79 g, 5.94 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 h, then was poured into brine and extracted with EtOAc. The combined  
10 extracts were washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 1.77 g (76%) of **25** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.

15

Example 26

5

To a stirred solution of *N*-chlorosuccinimide (155 mg, 1.2 mmol) in THF (18 mL) at room temperature was added **5** (600 mg, 0.97 mmol). The resulting yellow reaction mixture was stirred for 30 min, then piperazinone (214 mg, 2.1 mmol) was added in one portion, followed by a few drops of DMSO. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight, then was  
10 diluted with EtOAc, washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduce pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 240 mg (40%) of compound **26** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.

Example 27

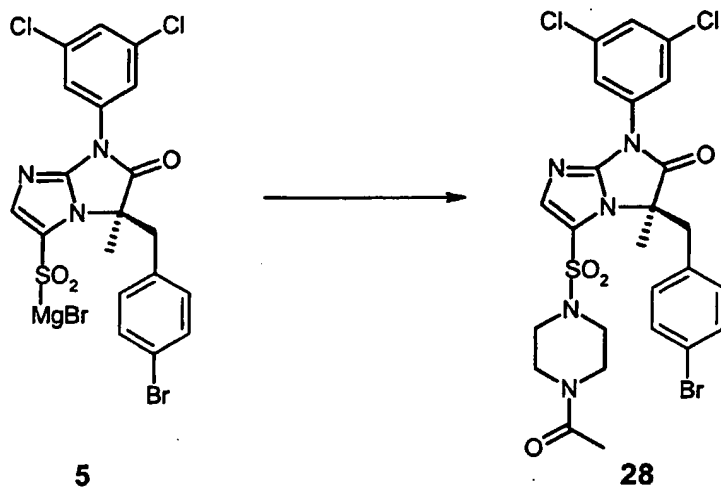
5

**5****27**

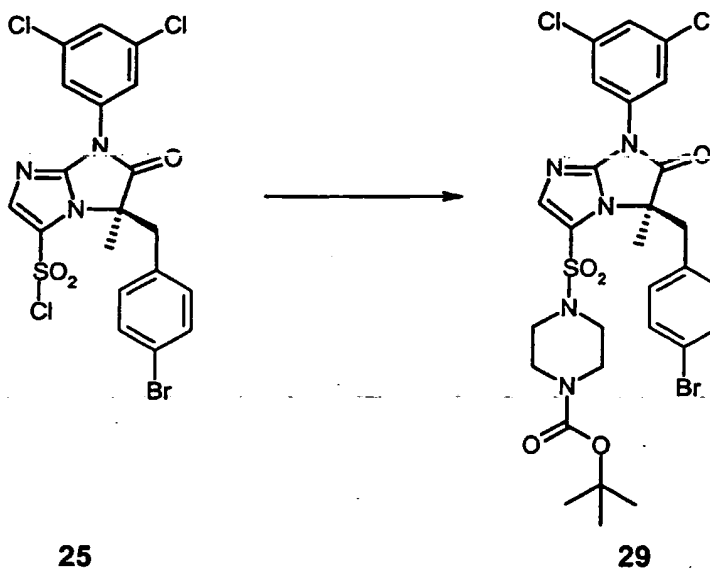
To a stirred solution of **5** (308 mg; 0.50 mmol) in THF (12 mL) at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added *N*-chlorosuccinimide (77.6 mg, 0.58 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for 10 min, warmed to  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  and then cooled back to  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . *L*-proline methyl ester hydrochloride (50 mg, 0.81 mmol) was added followed by triethylamine (0.12 mL) and the reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h. The mixture was treated with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride, and then was extracted with diethyl ether. The organic layer was dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and filtered and the residue purified via preparative TLC to afford 127 mg (65%) of compound **27** as a foam which was characterized via  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and MS.

15

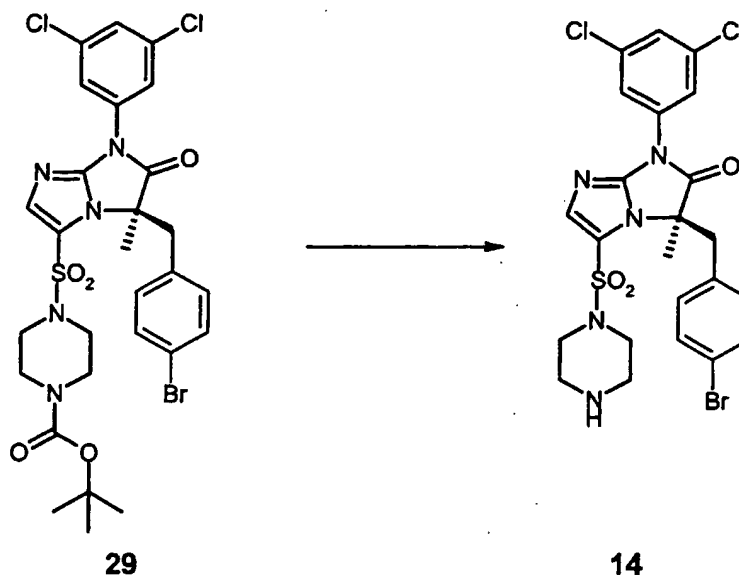


Example 28

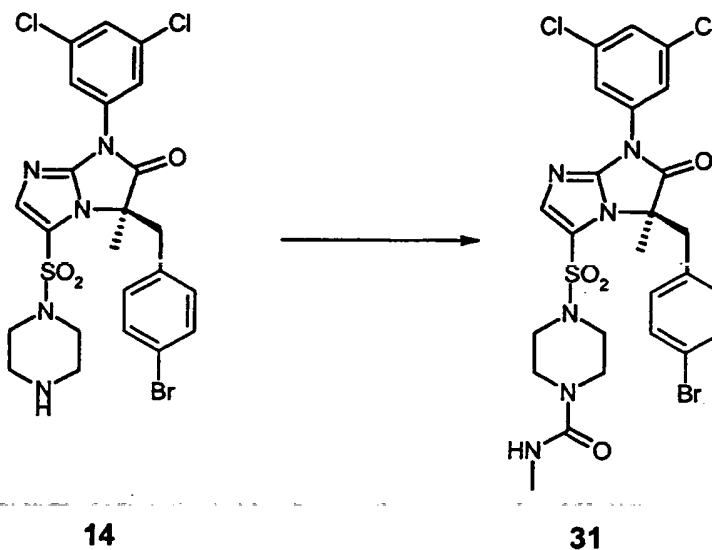
To a stirred solution of *N*-chlorosuccinimide (325 mg, 2.4 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added 5 (1.0 g, 1.6 mmol) in portions, at room temperature. The resulting yellow mixture was stirred for 5 min, then 4-acetylpiperazine (830 mg, 6.5 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir for 1 h, then was treated with brine, and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was washed successively with 1 M HCl, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, then was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 650 mg (63%) of compound 28 as a solid (m.p. 153-155 °C) which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS. Alternatively, compound 28 can also be prepared by the following method using compound 14 (Example 14): to a stirred solution of 14 (200 mg, 0.33 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 0 °C was added acetyl chloride (0.23 mL, 3.3 mmol) and triethylamine (0.23 mL, 1.65 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 1 h and was stirred an additional 1 h at that temperature. The mixture was poured into saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 193 mg (90%) of compound 28 as a solid which exhibited identical spectral characteristics with those of the title compound prepared via the former method.

Example 29

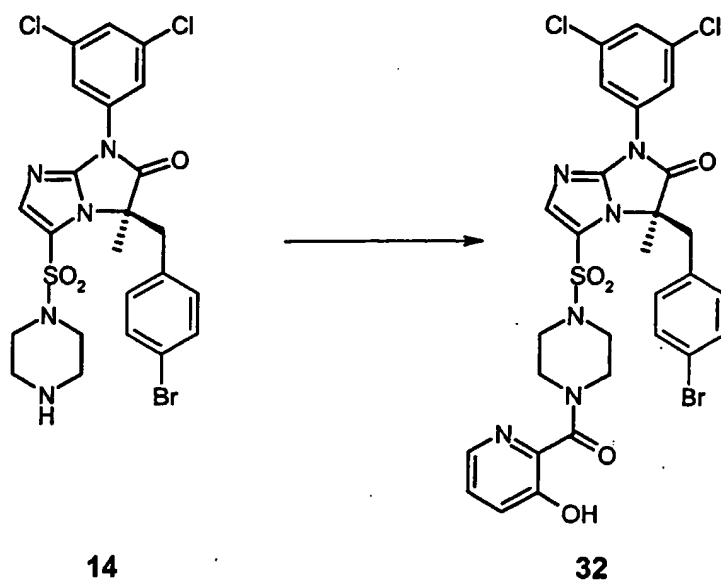
- 5 To a stirred solution of **25** (900 mg, 1.6 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was added a solution of 1-Boc-piperazine (670 mg, 3.6 mmol) in dichloromethane dropwise at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and allowed to stir for 2 h. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed successively with 0.1 M HCl, water and brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The
- 10 residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 931 mg (82%) of compound **29** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.

Example 30

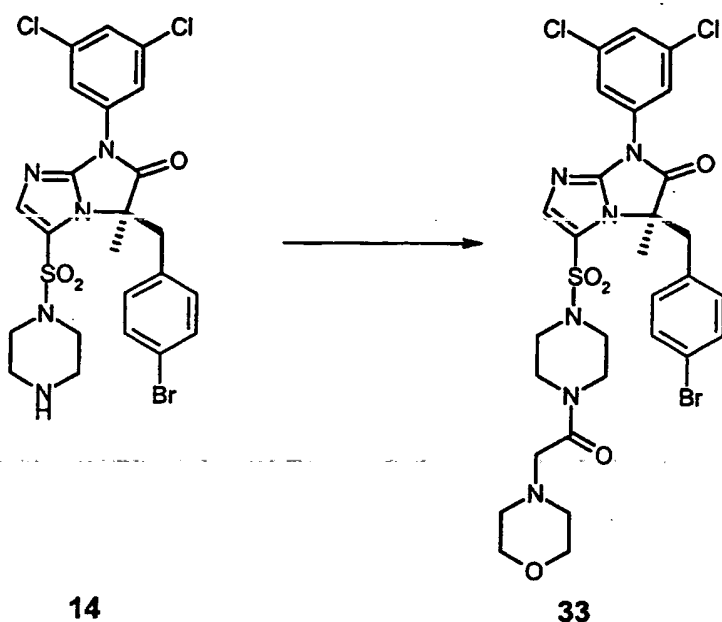
- 5 This example describes an alternate synthesis of compound **14** (Example 14)  
To a stirred solution of **29** (3.43 g, 4.9 mmol) in dichloromethane (30 mL) was added  
trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL, 65 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at room  
temperature for 2 h, then was poured into 1 M NaOH and was extracted with  
dichloromethane. The organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent  
10 was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel  
chromatography to afford 2.20 g (75%) of **14** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H  
NMR and MS.

Example 31

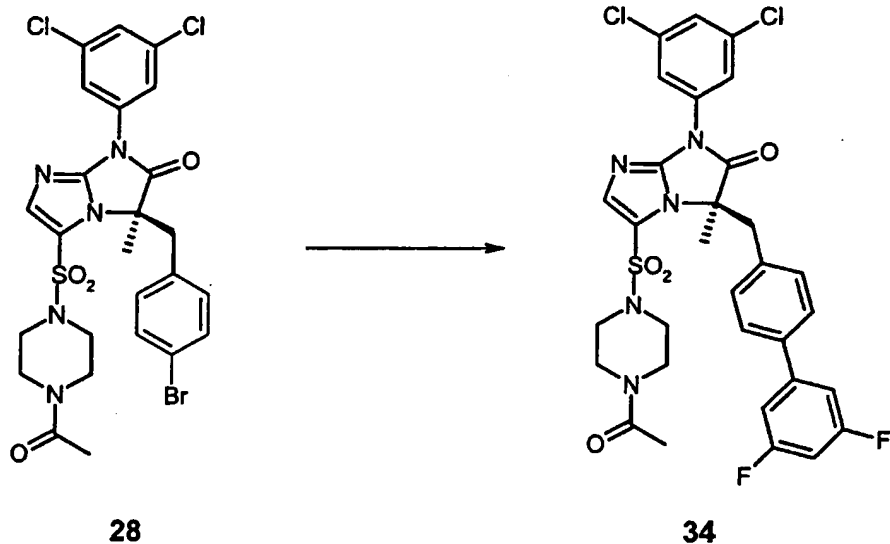
To a stirred solution of **14** (154 mg, 0.26 mmol) in dichloromethane (1.5 mL) was added methyl isocyanate (0.024 mL, 0.39 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 0.5 h, then  
5 an additional amount (0.024 mL, 0.39 mmol) of methyl isocyanate was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for an additional 0.5 h, then the solvent was removed under reduced pressure to afford a quantitative yield of **31** which was characterized via  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and MS.

Example 32

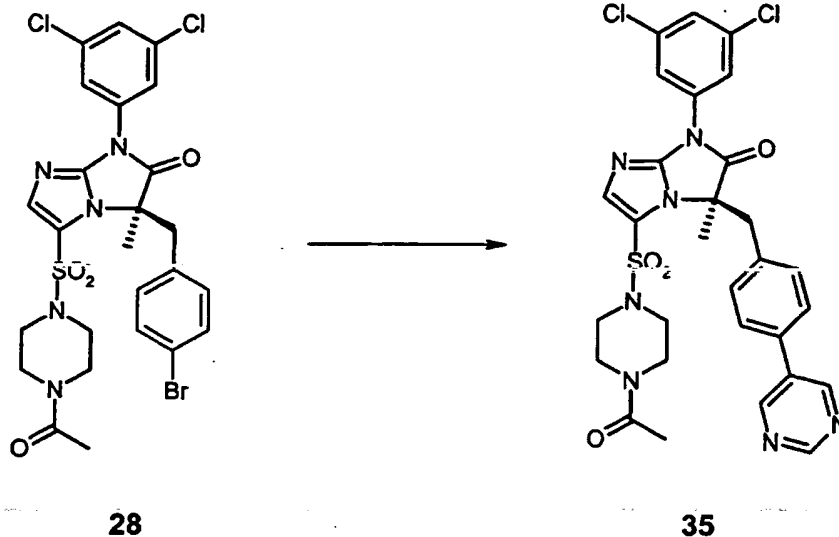
- 5 To a stirred solution of 3-hydroxypicolinic acid (138 mg, 0.99 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (10 mL) was added the PS-CDI resin (1.86 g, 1.65 mmol). After 1 h, **14** (200 mg, 0.33 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight. The resin was filtered and then washed with dichloromethane and the combined organic layers were poured into water. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane,
- 10 then the organic layer was washed with brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 89 mg (37%) of compound **32** as a foam which was characterized via  $^1\text{H}$  NMR and MS.

Example 33

To a stirred solution of morpholinoacetic acid (35 mg, 0.24 mmol) in *N,N*-  
5 dimethylformamide (8 mL) was added the PS-CDI resin (425 mg, 0.48 mmol). After 1 h,  
**14** (50 mg, 0.08 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to stir overnight.  
The resin was filtered and then washed with dichloromethane and the combined organic  
layers were poured into water. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane,  
then the organic layer was washed with brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and filtered and the  
10 solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative  
TLC to afford 59 mg (98%) of compound **33** as a foam which was characterized via  $^1\text{H}$   
NMR and MS.

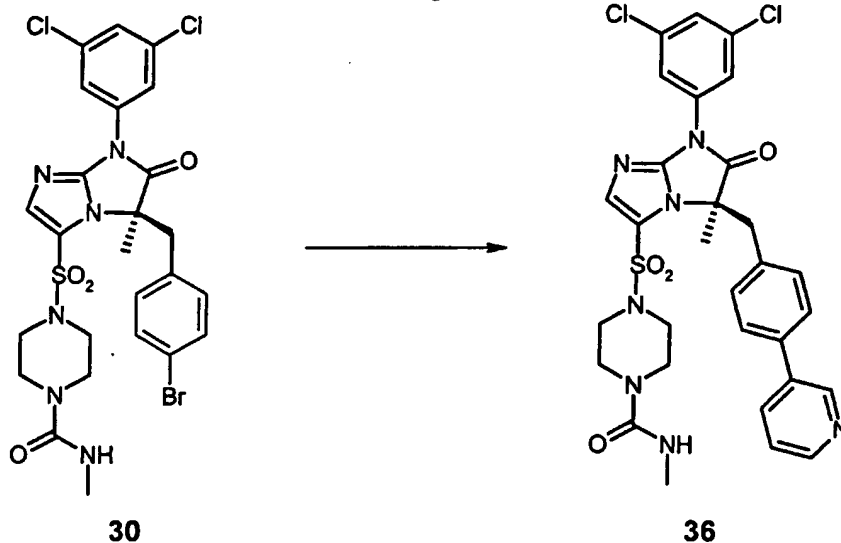
Example 34

To a solution of **28** (29 mg, 0.045 mmol), 3,5-difluorophenylboronic acid (0.026 mL, 50% wt/wt in THF/H<sub>2</sub>O; 0.09 mmol) and PdCl<sub>2</sub>(dppf)•CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1.8 mg, 0.0022 mmol) in a mixture of toluene (2 mL) and EtOH (1 mL) was added a solution of K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (25 mg, 0.18 mmol) in water (0.5 mL). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 4 h, then was diluted with toluene, and washed with brine, was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 18.3 mg (60%) of compound **34** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.

Example 35

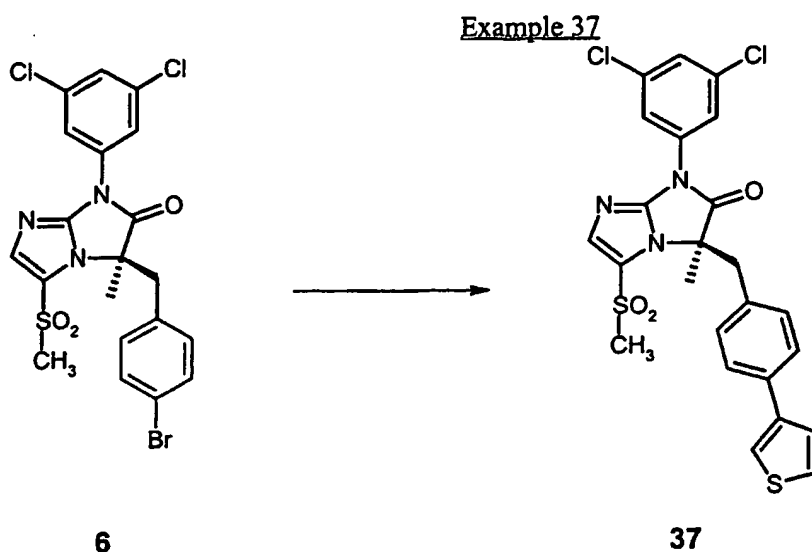
To a stirred solution of **28** (300 mg, 0.47 mmol) and 5-(trimethylstannyl)pyrimidine (180 mg, 0.74 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) was added Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (120 mg, 0.11 mmol) and the  
5 reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 15 h. Decolorizing charcoal was added to the mixture, which was stirred and then filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 78 mg (26%) of compound **35** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.



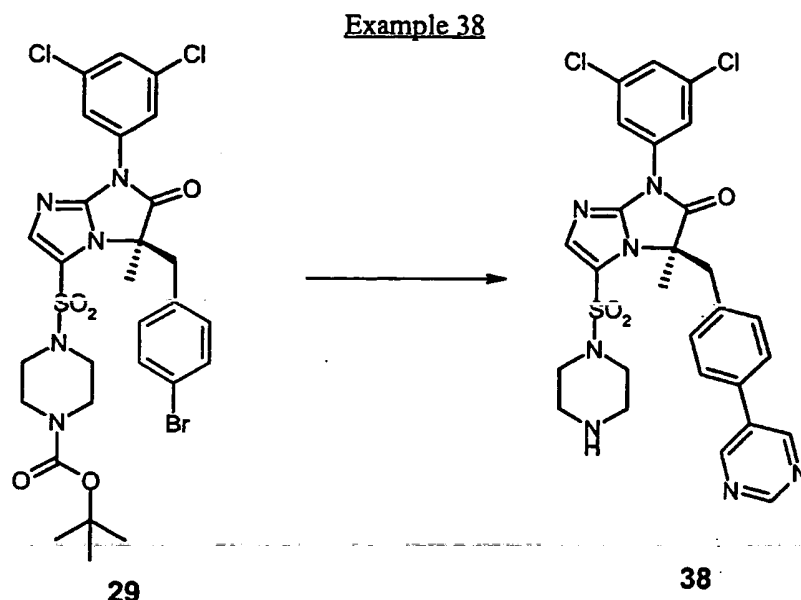
Example 36

To a stirred solution of 31 (168 mg, 0.26 mmol) and pyridine-3-boronic acid propanediol ester (59 mg, 0.36 mmol) in a mixture of toluene (3 mL), ethanol (1.5 mL) and 2 M aqueous sodium carbonate (1.25 mL) was added Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (59 mg, 0.05 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 1 h. The mixture was then filtered and the organic layer was diluted with EtOAc, washed with water then dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 90 mg (32%) of compound 36 as a solid which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.



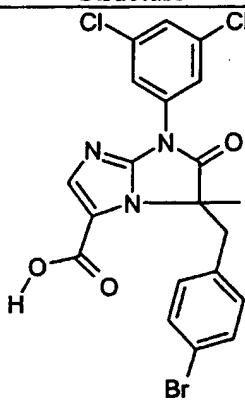
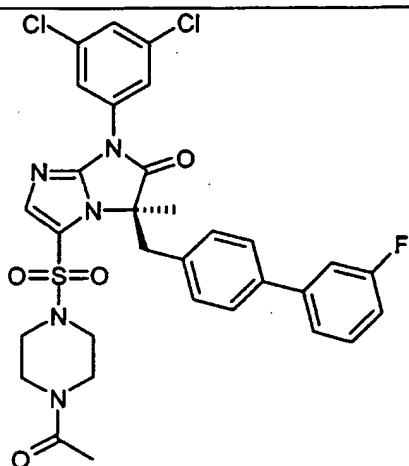


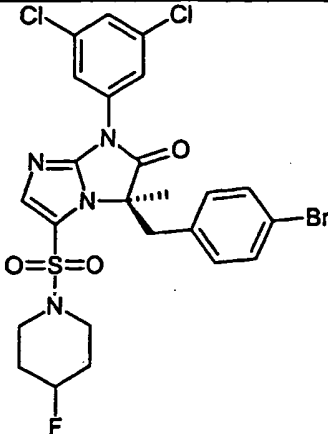
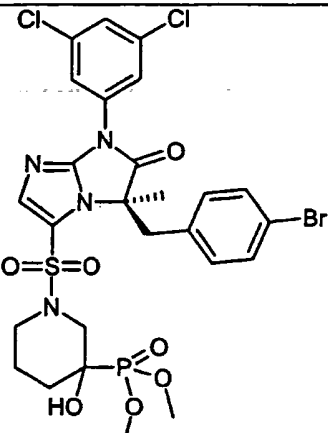
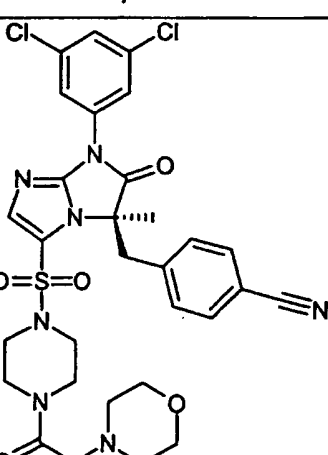
To a stirred solution of **6** (195 mg, 0.37 mmol) and 3-thiopheneboronic acid (94 mg, 0.74 mmol) in a mixture of toluene (4.4 mL), ethanol (2.2 mL) and 2 M aqueous sodium carbonate (0.55 mL) was added Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (43 mg, 0.037 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 3 h, then was diluted with EtOAc and washed successively with water and brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via preparative TLC to afford 123 mg (63%) of compound **37** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.



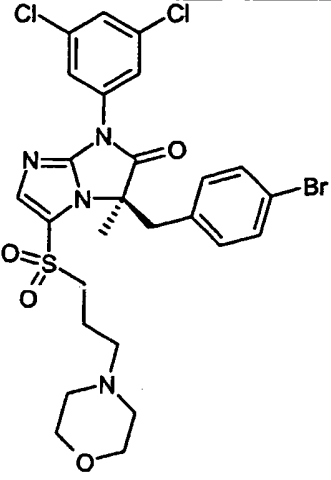
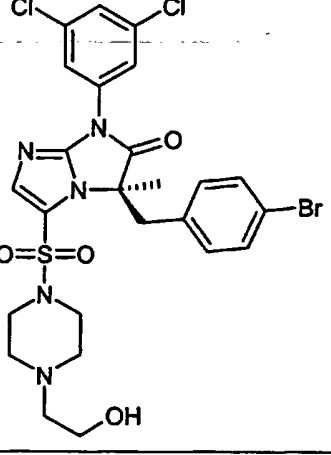
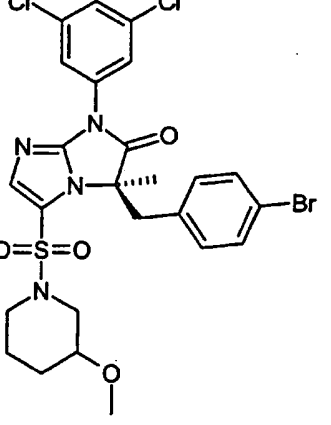
To a stirred solution of **29** (860 mg, 1.23 mmol) and pyrimidine-5-boronic acid pinacol ester (506 mg, 2.46 mmol) in a mixture of toluene (7 mL), ethanol (3.5 mL) and 2 M sodium carbonate (1.7 mL) was added Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (142 mg, 0.12 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 2 h. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc and washed successively with water and brine, then was dried and filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 790 mg (92%) of Boc-protected **38** as a foam. To a stirred solution of Boc-protected **38** (704 mg, 1.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) at room temperature was added trifluoroacetic acid (3 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h, then was poured into 1 M sodium hydroxide and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was washed with brine and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, was filtered and the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was purified via silica gel chromatography to afford 447 mg (64%) of compound **38** as a foam which was characterized via <sup>1</sup>H NMR and MS.

The following additional compounds of the invention were prepared by methods analogous to those described above. Each of the compounds below was characterized by NMR and MS.

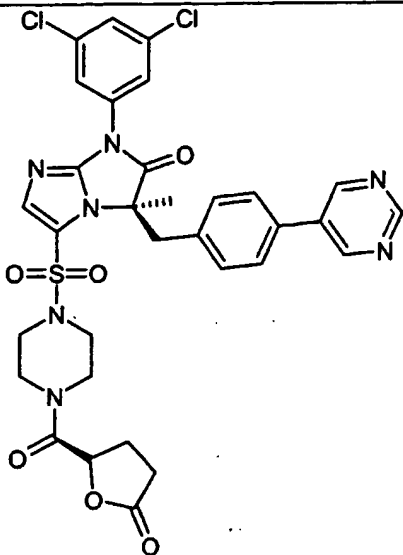
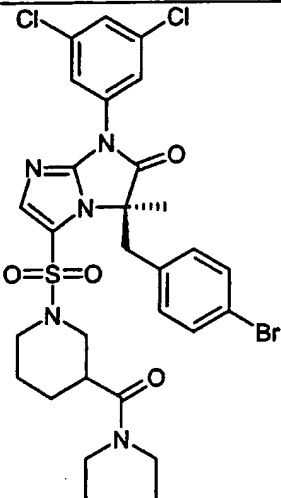
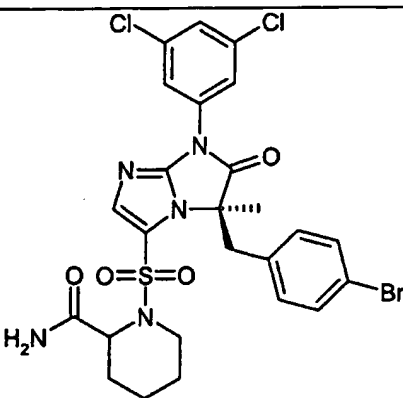
Example No.	Structure	Melting Point (°C)
39		>190 (decomp.)
40		resin

41		foam
42		foam
43		resin

44	 <chem>CC(=O)OCC(=O)N1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2nc3c(ncn3C(=O)N(c4cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c4)Cc5ccc(Br)cc5)c2</chem>	resin
45	 <chem>CC(=O)OCC(=O)N1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2nc3c(ncn3C(=O)N(c4cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c4)Cc5ccc(Br)cc5)c2</chem>	185-189
46	 <chem>CC(=O)OCC(=O)N1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2nc3c(ncn3C(=O)N(c4cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c4)Cc5ccc(cc5Oc6ccccc6)cc5)c2</chem>	resin

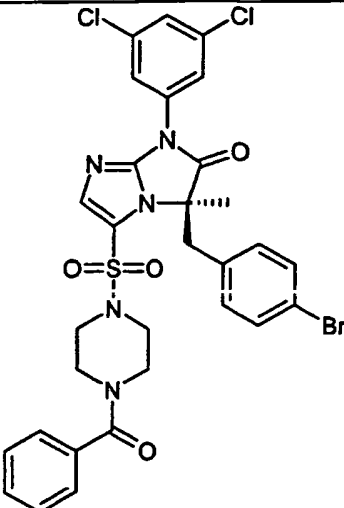
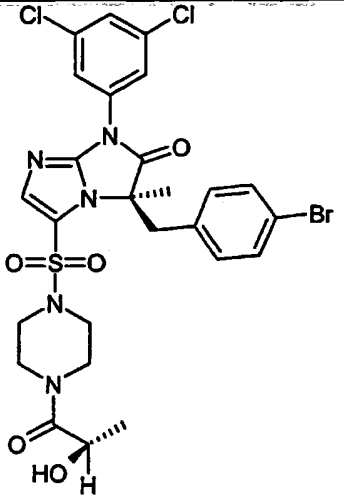
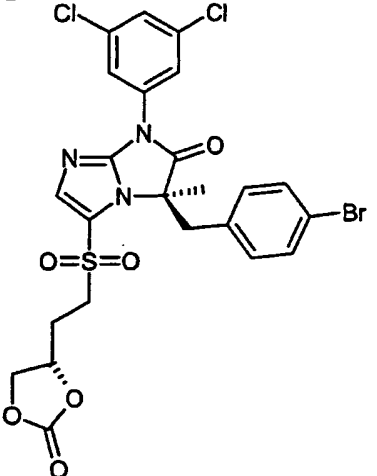
47		resin
48		foam
49		not determined

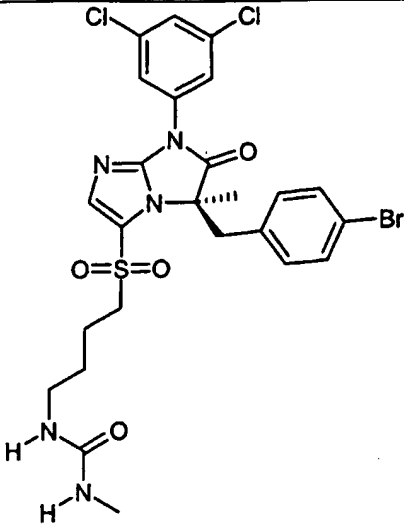
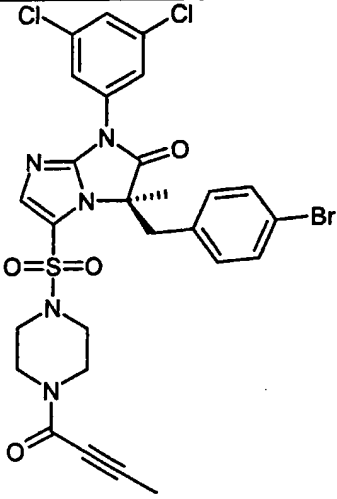
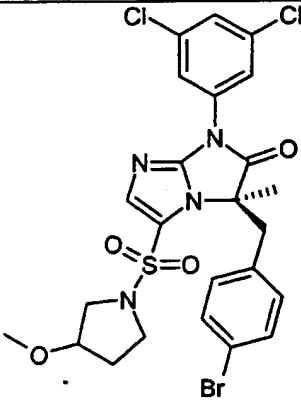


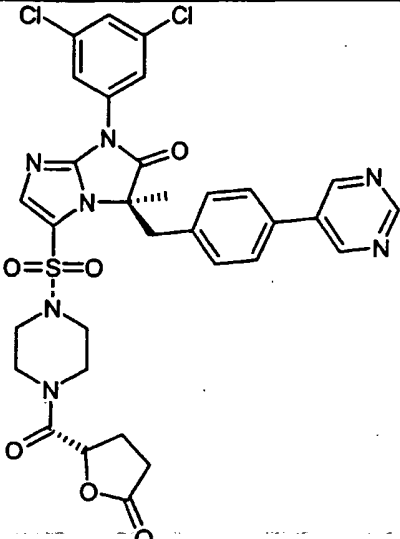
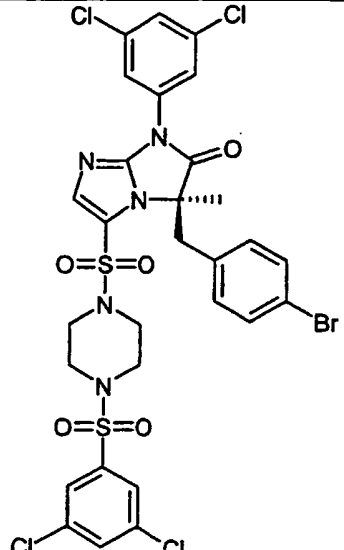
50		not determined
51		75-82
52		not determined

53	 <chem>OCC(=O)OCC(=O)N1CCN(CC1)S(=O)(=O)c2cc(CN3C(=O)N(C3c4ccc(Br)cc4)C5CC6=CC=C(C=C6)C(Cl)=CC(Cl)=C5)c7nn[nH]7</chem>	not determined
54	 <chem>OCC1CCN(CC1)S(=O)(=O)c2cc(CN3C(=O)N(C3c4ccc(Br)cc4)C5CC6=CC=C(C=C6)C(Cl)=CC(Cl)=C5)c7nn[nH]7</chem>	79.1-80.9
55	 <chem>CCOC(=O)N1CCN(CC1)S(=O)(=O)c2cc(CN3C(=O)N(C3c4ccc(Br)cc4)C5CC6=CC=C(C=C6)C(Cl)=CC(Cl)=C5)c7nn[nH]7</chem>	foam

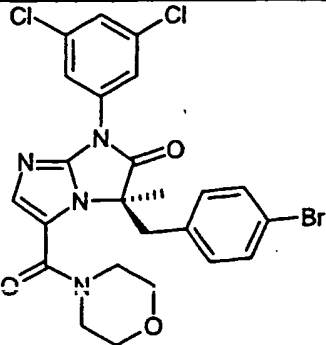
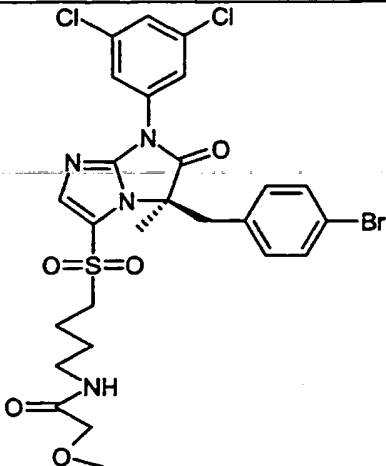
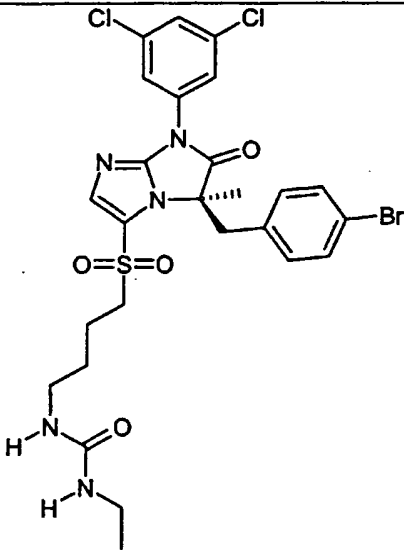
56	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N2C(=O)N(C2C(=O)N)C3=CC=CC=C3Br)N2</chem>	foam
57	 <chem>NC(=O)N1CCN(CC1S(=O)(=O)C2=CC=CC=C2Br)C3=CC=CC=C3Br</chem>	not determined
58	 <chem>O=C1CCN(CC1S(=O)(=O)C2=CC=CC=C2Br)C3=CC=CC=C3Br</chem>	not determined

59		195-197
60		not determined
61		not determined

62		not determined
63		not determined
64		foam

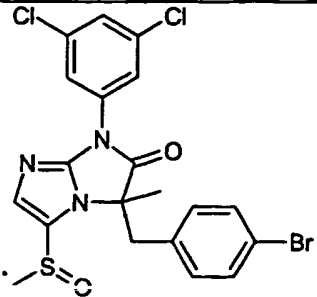
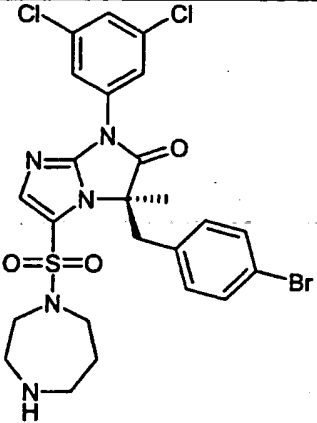
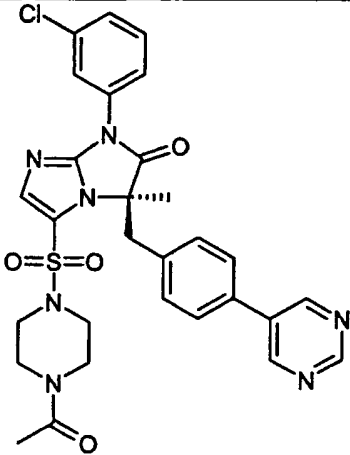
65	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 65: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-pyridinylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-1,2,4-triazol-5-ylmethyl group at C4. The C4 substituent is shown with a dashed bond. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonamide group at C2, which is further substituted with a piperidine ring. The piperidine ring is substituted with a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolane-5-carbonyl group.</p>	not determined
66	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 66: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-1,2,4-triazol-5-ylmethyl group at C4. The C4 substituent is shown with a dashed bond. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonamide group at C2, which is further substituted with a piperidine ring. The piperidine ring is substituted with a sulfonamide group, which is further substituted with a 4-chlorophenyl group.</p>	146-148

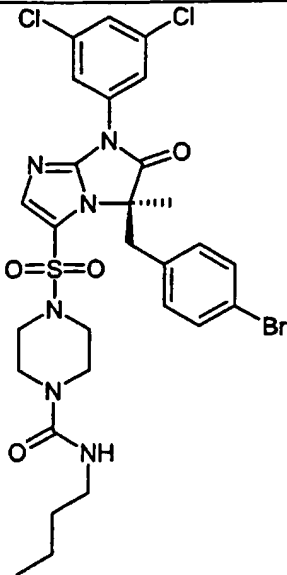
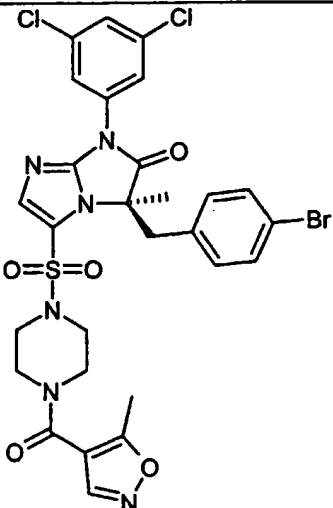
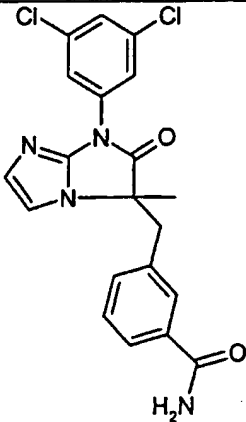
67	 <chem>COC(=O)CCS(=O)(=O)c1cc2n(c1C(=O)N2C3=CC=CC=C3Br)C4=CC(=CC=C4)Cl</chem>	foam
68	 <chem>BrC1=CC(=CC=C1)C2=CC(=CC=C2)BrC3=C4N5C(=O)N(C5C6=CC=CC=C6Br)C(=N4)C7=CC(=CC=C7)Cl</chem>	not determined
69	 <chem>CC(C)(C)OC(=O)N1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2cc3n(c2C(=O)N3C4=CC=CC=C4C5=CC=CC=C5N6=CC=CC=N6)C7=CC(=CC=C7)Cl</chem>	foam

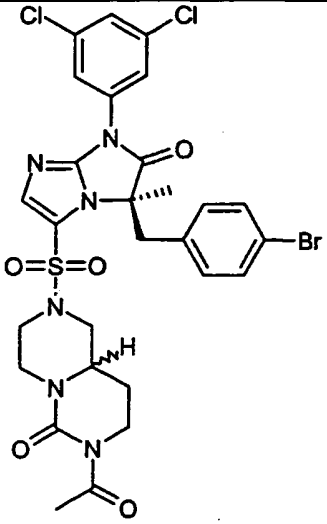
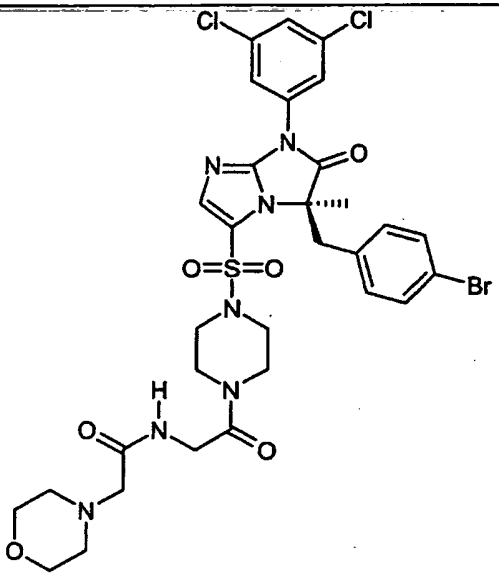
70		foam
71		not determined
72		not determined

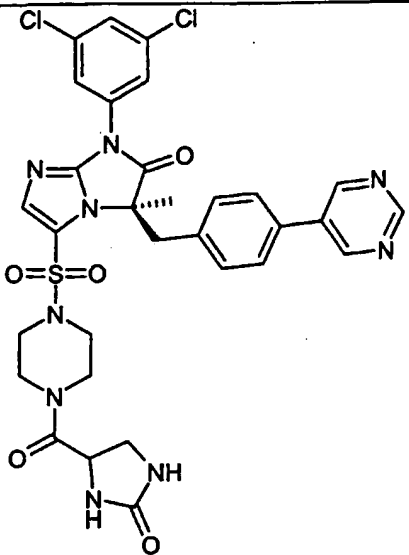
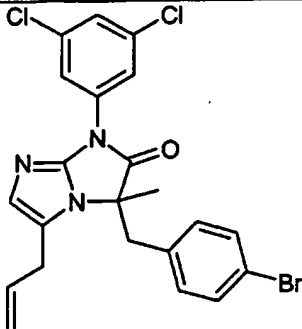
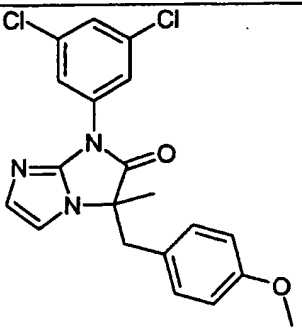


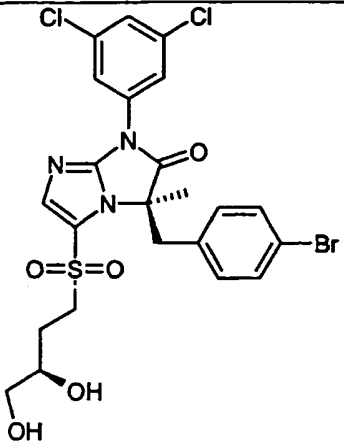
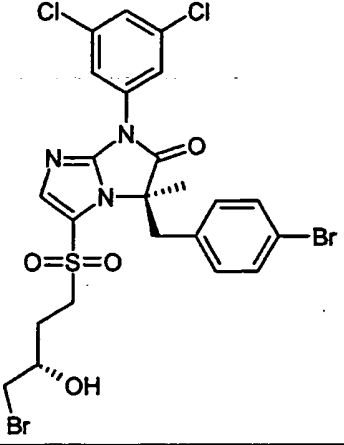
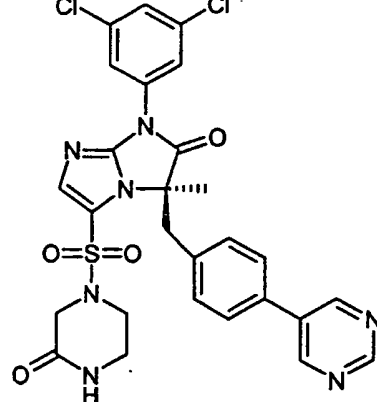
73	 <chem>COc1ccc(cc1)NS(=O)(=O)N2C=CN(C2C(=O)N3C=CC(=C3)C4=CC=C(C=C4)Br)C5=CC(=C(C=C5)Cl)Cl</chem>	not determined
74	 <chem>c1ccccc1COC(=O)N2C=CN(C2C(=O)N3C=CC(=C3)C4=CC=C(C=C4)Br)C5=CC(=C(C=C5)Cl)Cl</chem>	145-147
75	 <chem>O=C1N2CCN(C2)CC1C(=O)N3C=CN(C3C(=O)N4C=CC(=C4)C5=CC=C(C=C5)Br)C6=CC(=C(C=C6)Cl)Cl</chem>	not determined

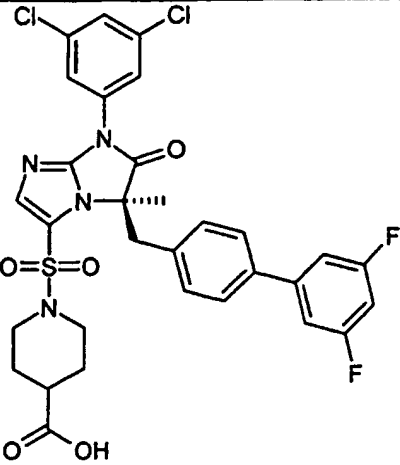
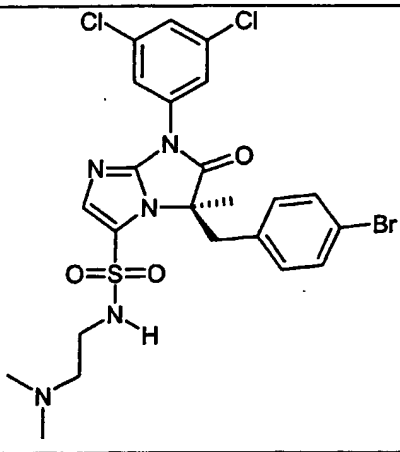
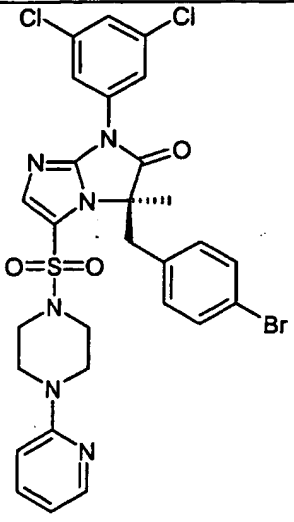
76		not determined
77		hard oil
78		foam

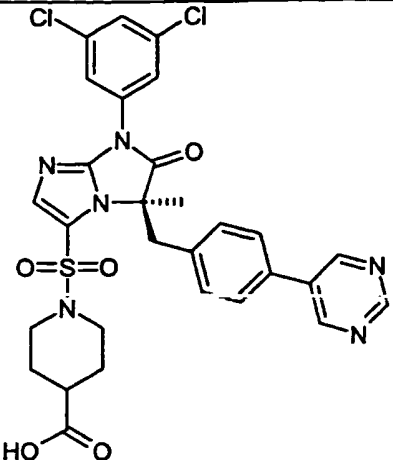
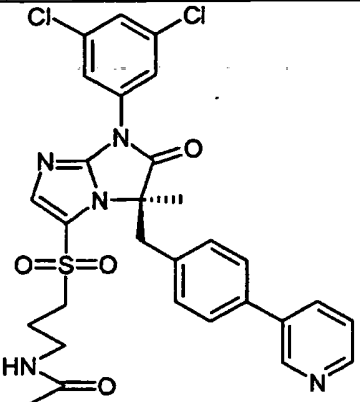
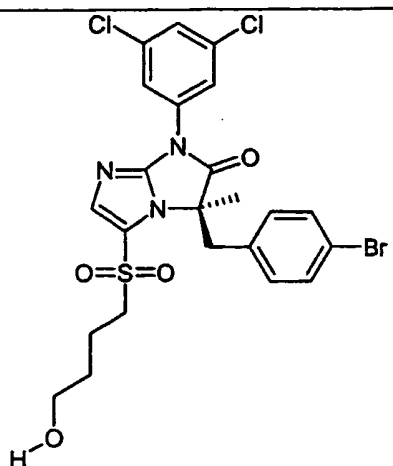
79		83.5-87
80		not determined
81		158.0-159.3

82	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 82: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5 (dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is linked to a piperidine ring, which is further substituted with a 2-acetyl-1,4-dihydropyridine-3-carbonyl group.</p>	foam
83	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 83: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5 (dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is linked to a piperidine ring, which is further substituted with a 2-(2-(2-morpholinoethyl)ethyl)amino-1,4-dihydropyridine-3-carbonyl group.</p>	114.0-115.5

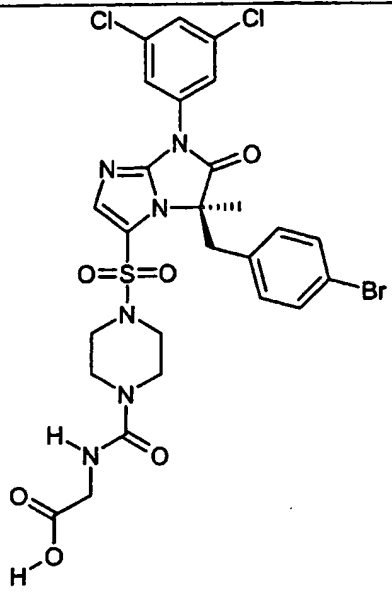
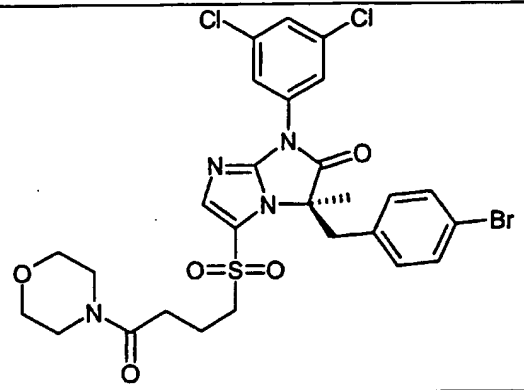
84		not determined
85		thick oil
86		65.6-67.0

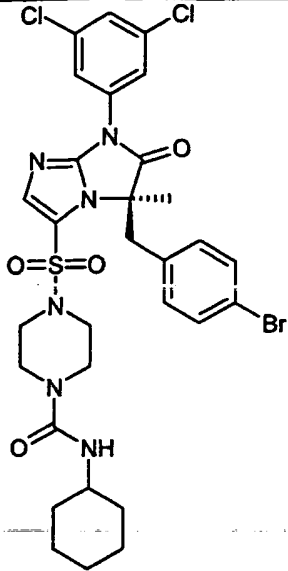
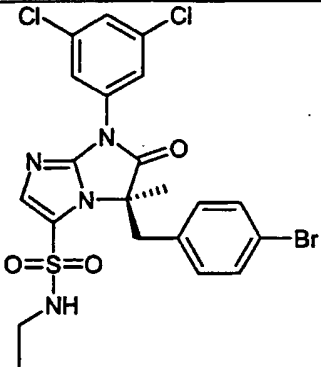
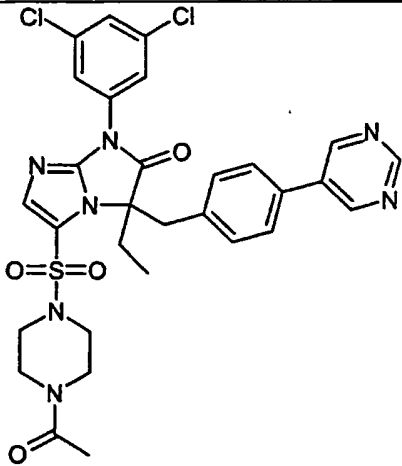
87		oil
88		foam
89		163.7-165.2

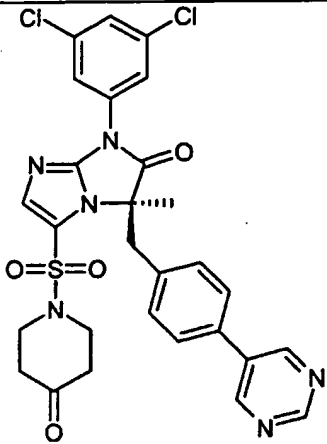
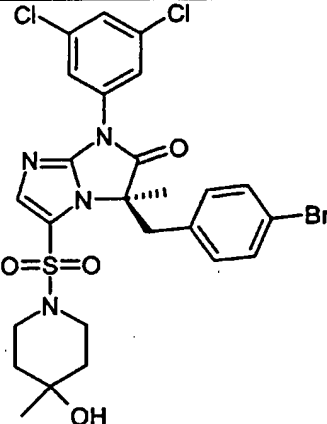
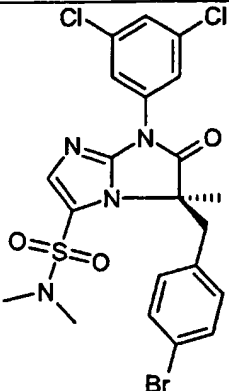
90		not determined
91		not determined
92		90-95

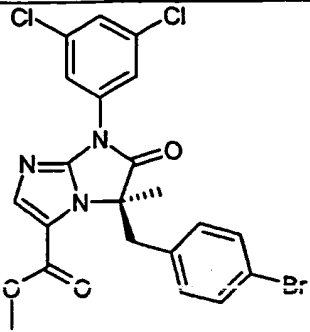
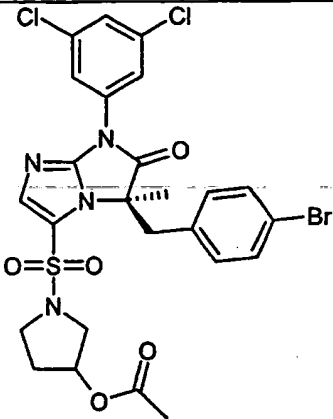
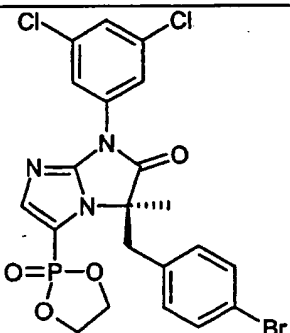
93		not determined
94		not determined
95		foam

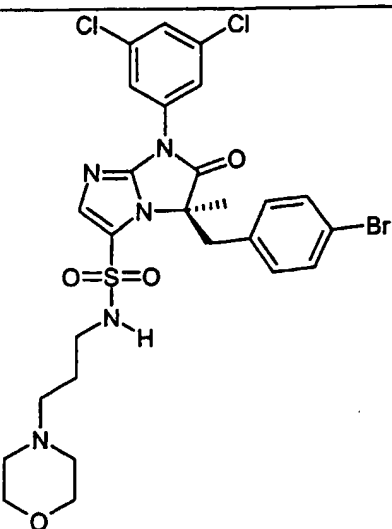
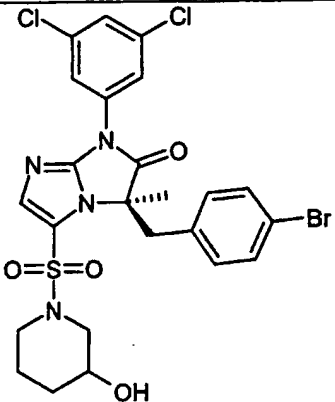
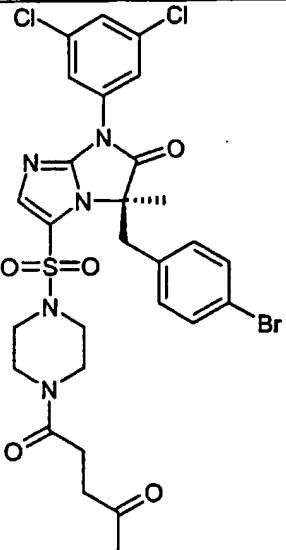


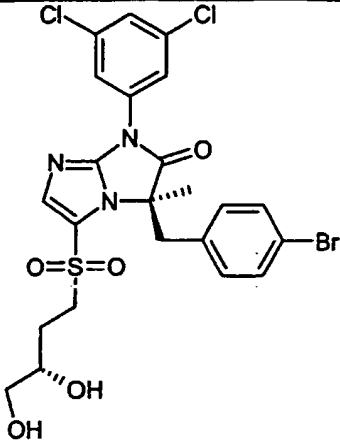
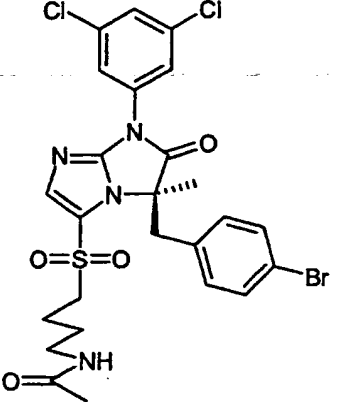
96	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 96: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5 (wedge), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring, which is further linked via its nitrogen to a carbonyl group, and finally to a 2-aminoacetic acid moiety.</p>	foam
97	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 97: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5 (wedge), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a 4-morpholinylpropyl chain, which is further linked via its nitrogen to a carbonyl group.</p>	oil

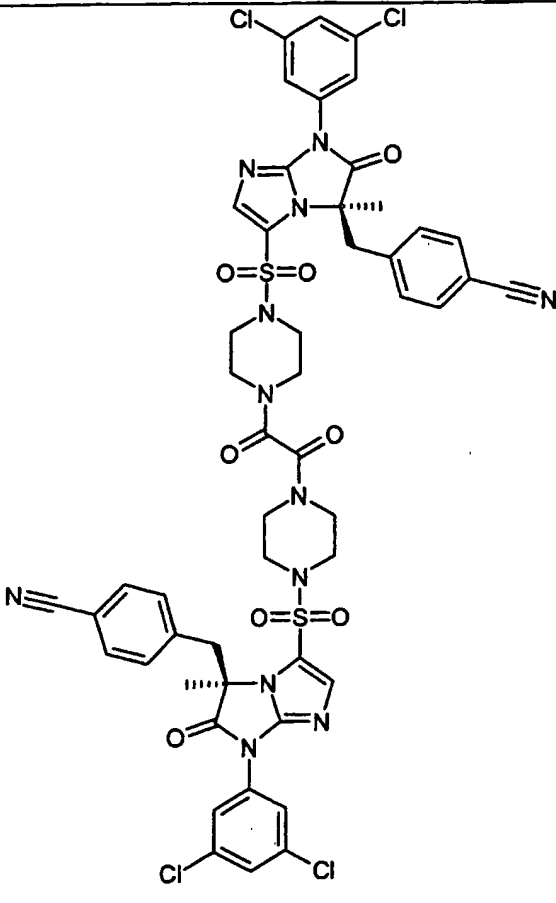
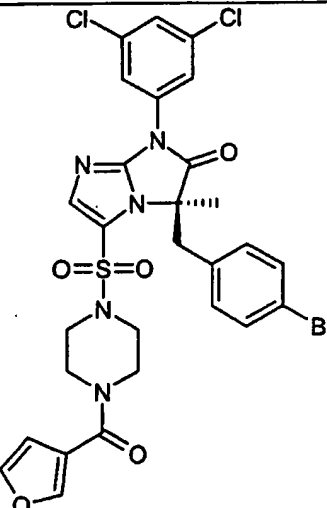
98		108-110
99		not determined
100		resin

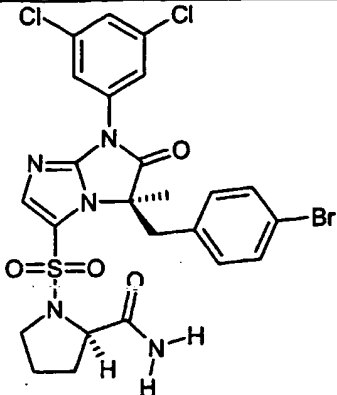
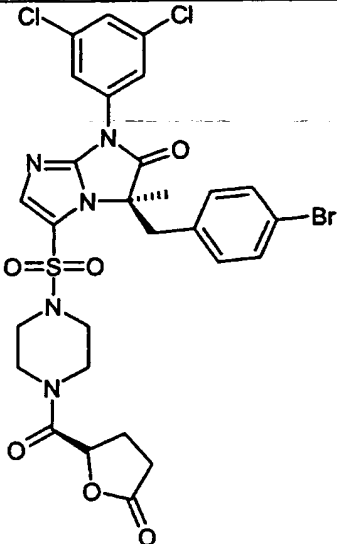
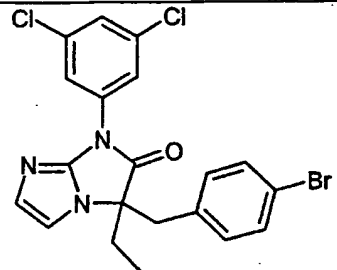
101		not determined
102		foam
103		not determined

104		72.5-73.6
105		foam
106		oil

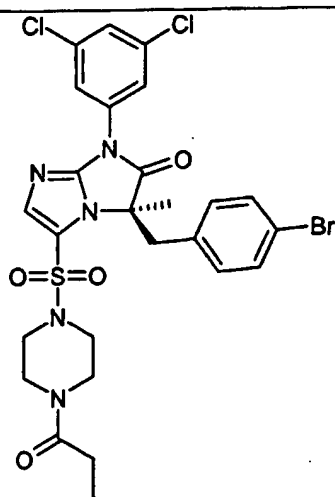
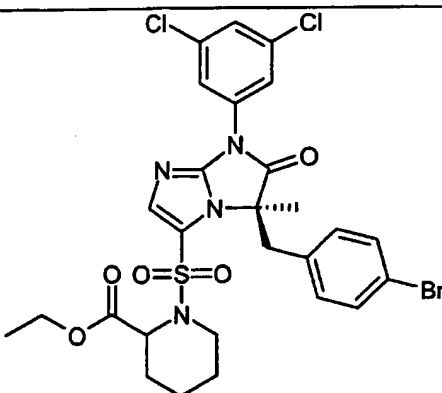
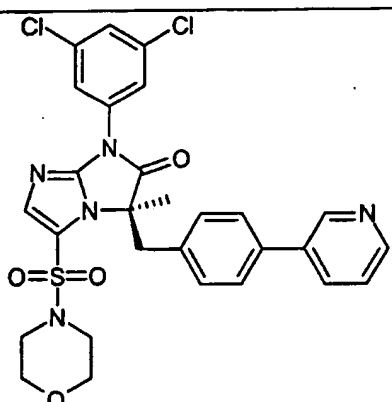
107		not determined
108		gummy foam
109		foam

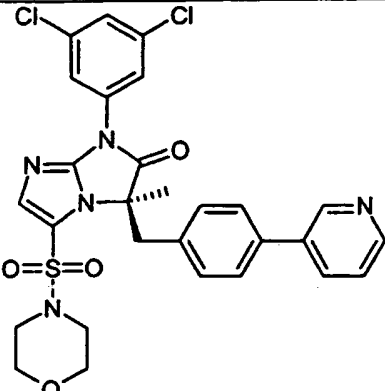
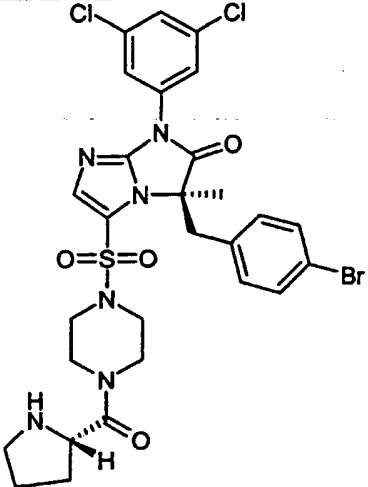
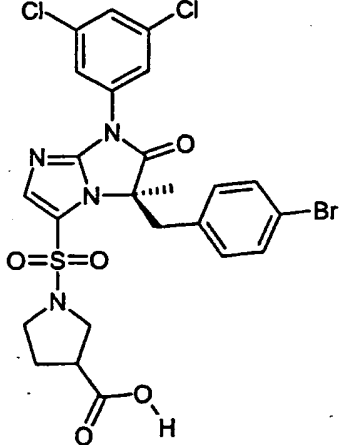
110	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 110: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4, and a 2-(2-hydroxyethyl)sulfonyl group at C5. The C4 position also has a dashed bond to the triazole ring.</p>	foam
111	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 111: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4, and a 2-(4-oxobutyl)sulfonyl group at C5. The C4 position also has a dashed bond to the triazole ring.</p>	not determined

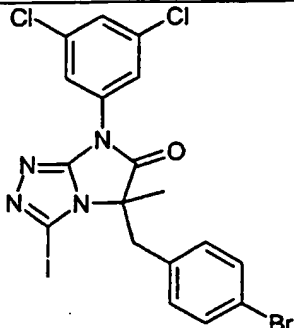
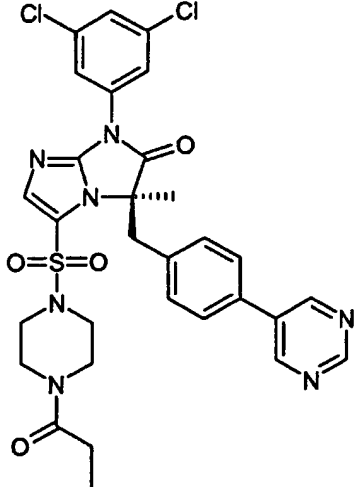
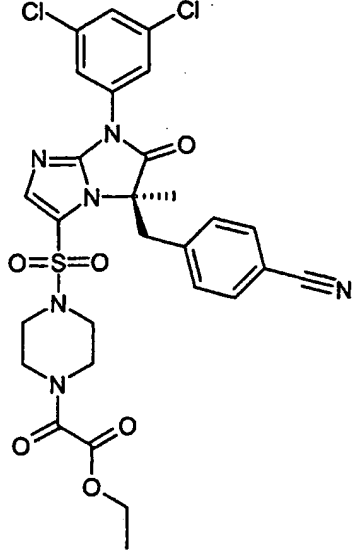
112	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 112: A symmetrical molecule featuring two 4,6-dichlorophenyl groups attached to the 2-positions of two 1,2,4-triazole rings. The triazole rings are linked via their 4-positions through a central chain consisting of a piperazine ring, a carbonyl group, and a sulfonamide group. The piperazine ring is also substituted with a 4-cyanophenyl group at the 3-position. The triazole rings are further substituted with a 4-cyanophenyl group at the 5-position.</p>	resin
113	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 113: A symmetrical molecule featuring two 4,6-dichlorophenyl groups attached to the 2-positions of two 1,2,4-triazole rings. The triazole rings are linked via their 4-positions through a central chain consisting of a piperazine ring, a carbonyl group, and a sulfonamide group. The piperazine ring is also substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group at the 3-position. The triazole rings are further substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group at the 5-position.</p>	resin

114		not determined
115		not determined
116		oil

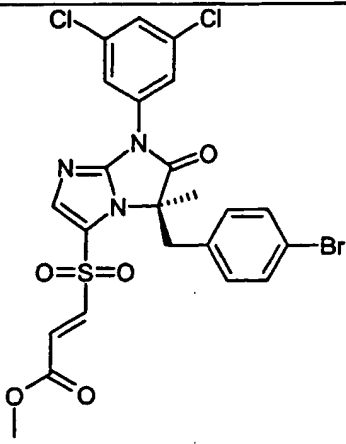
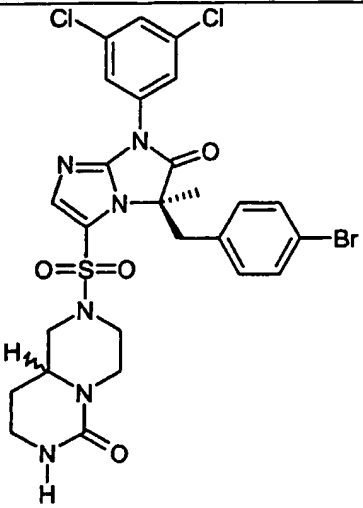
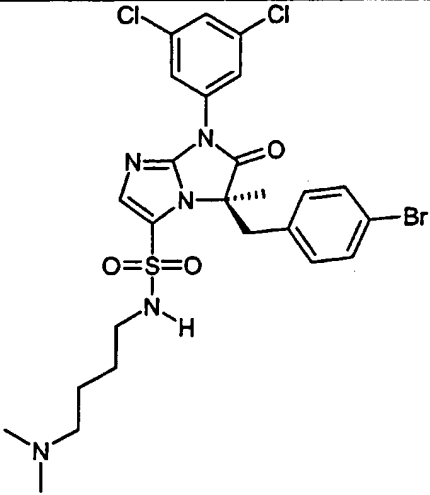


117		foam
118		71.2-72.5
119		164.8-166.3

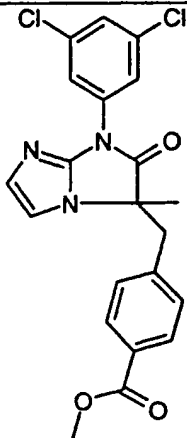
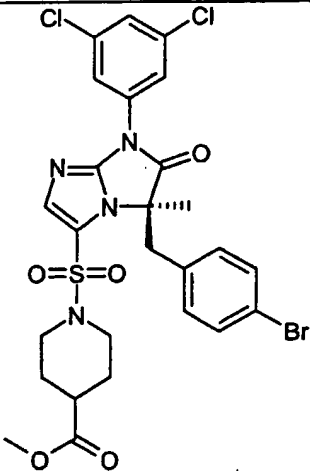
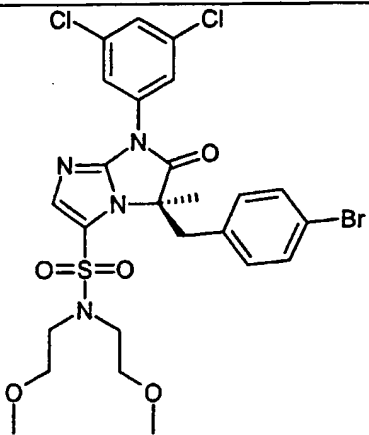
120		foam
121		125.5 - 127.8
122		not determined

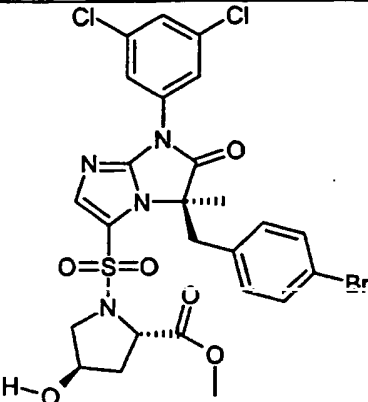
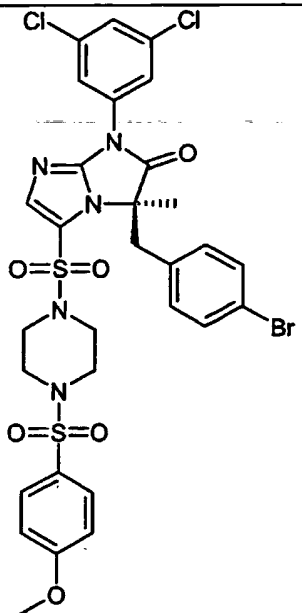
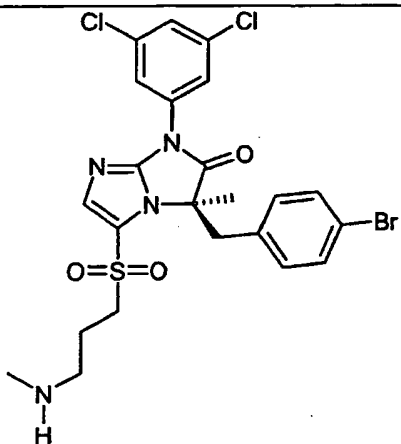
123		201-203
124		101.8-103.6
125		resin

126	 <chem>O=C1N2C(=N1)N(C2C(=O)N3C(=O)N(C3)S(=O)(=O)C4CCCC4)Cc5ccc(Br)cc5</chem>	not determined
127	 <chem>CC(C)(C)NC(=O)N1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)C2C(=N1)N(C2C(=O)N3C(=O)N(C3)S(=O)(=O)C4CCCC4)Cc5ccc(Br)cc5</chem>	101-105
128	 <chem>C=S(=O)C1C(=N1)N(C2C(=O)N3C(=O)N(C3)S(=O)(=O)C4CCCC4)Cc5ccc(Br)cc5</chem>	120.2-122.2

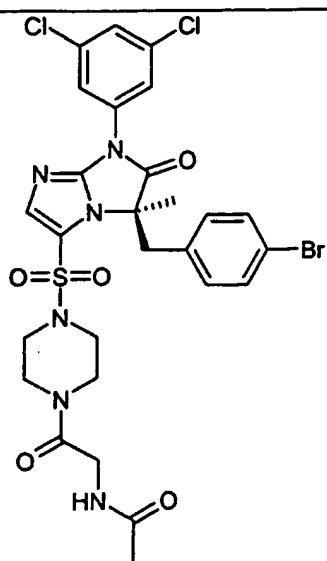
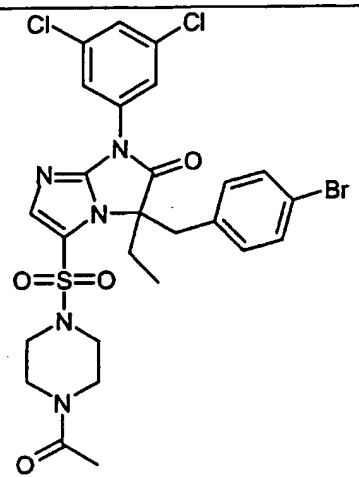
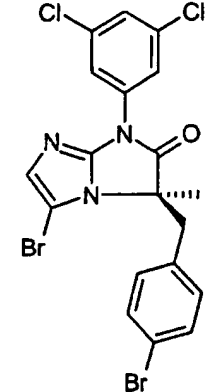
129		foam
130		foam
131		resin

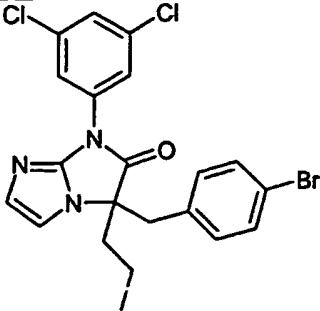
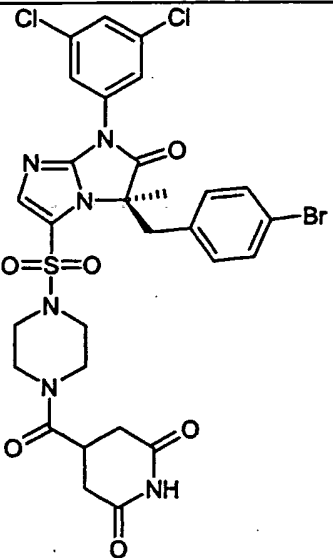
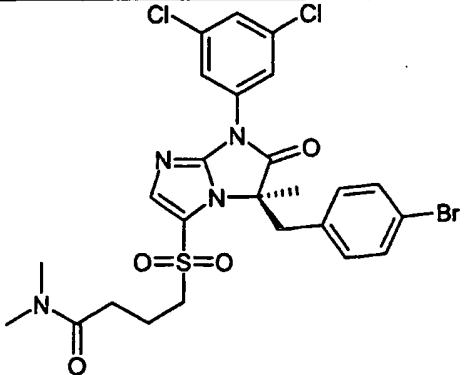
132	 <chem>COCCCS(=O)(=O)c1cc(C(=O)N2C(=O)N(C2c3ccc(Br)cc3)c4nn(c5cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c5)n4)c1</chem>	oil
133	 <chem>OC1CCCCC1NS(=O)(=O)c2cc(C(=O)N3C(=O)N(C3c4ccc(Br)cc4)c5nn(c6cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c6)n5)c2</chem>	foam
134	 <chem>CC(=O)N1CC[C@H](C)CN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2cc(C(=O)N3C(=O)N(C3c4ccc(Br)cc4)c5nn(c6cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c6)n5)c2</chem>	foam

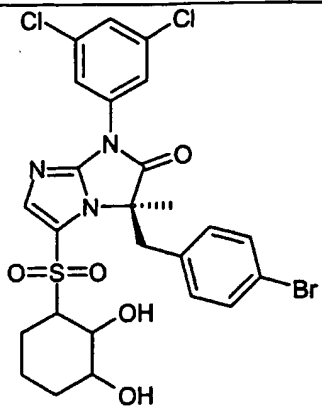
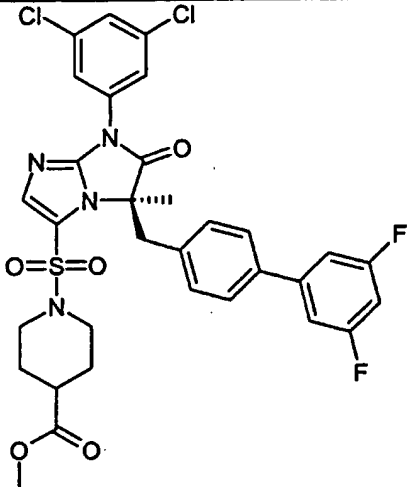
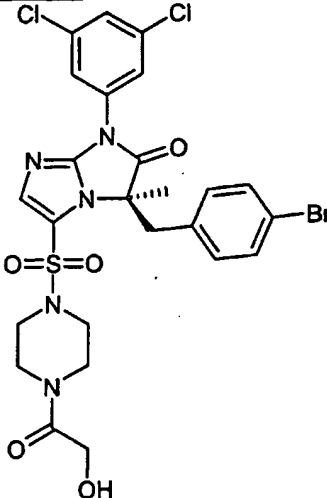
135		34.0-35.5
136		not determined
137		not determined

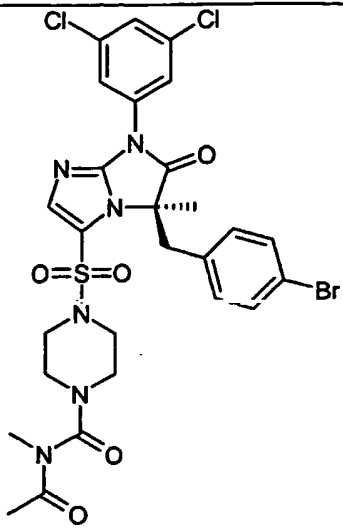
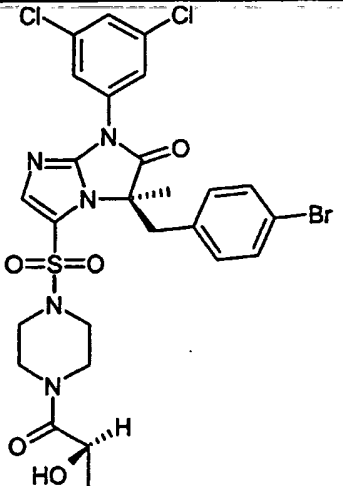
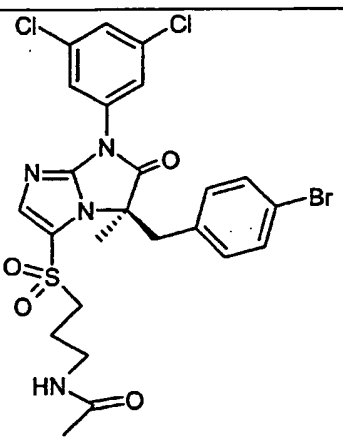
138		foam
139		166-169
140		not determined

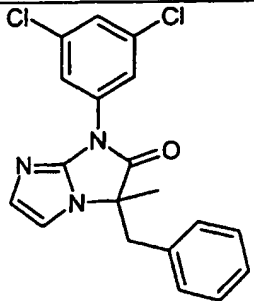
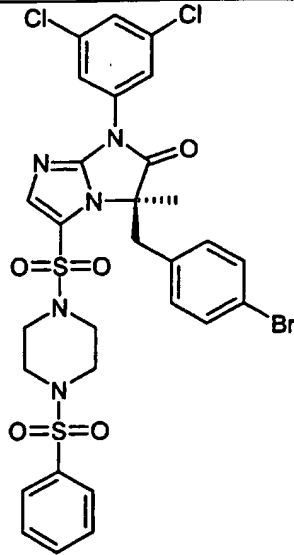
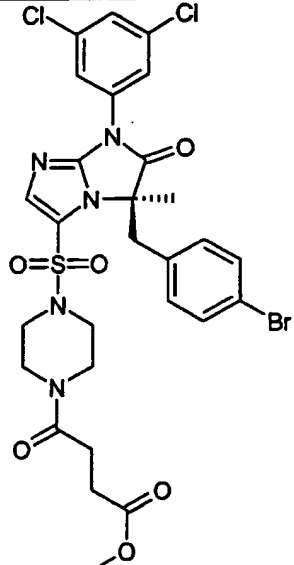


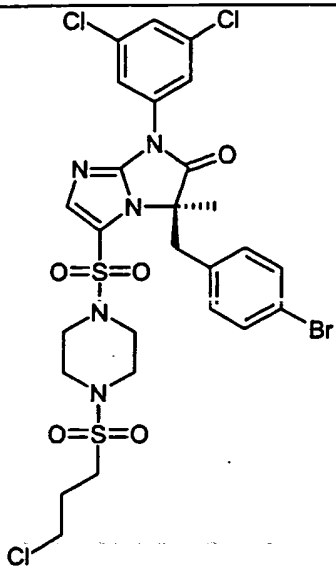
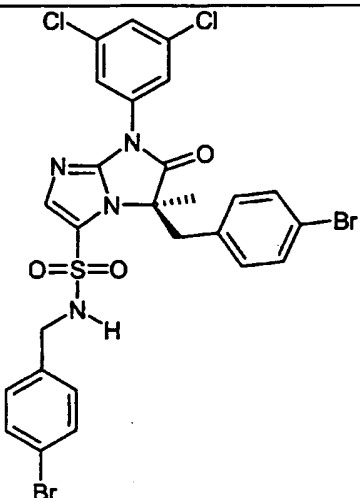
141		resin
142		resin
143		foam

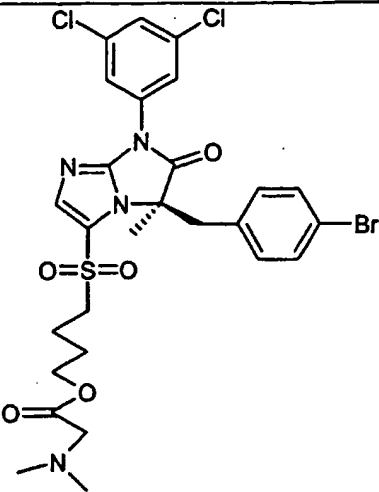
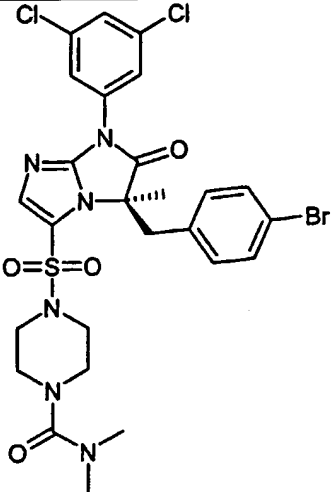
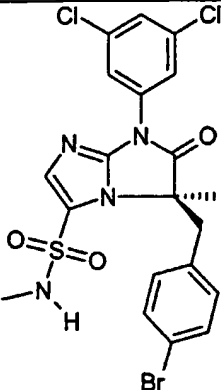
144		oil
145		not determined
146		foam

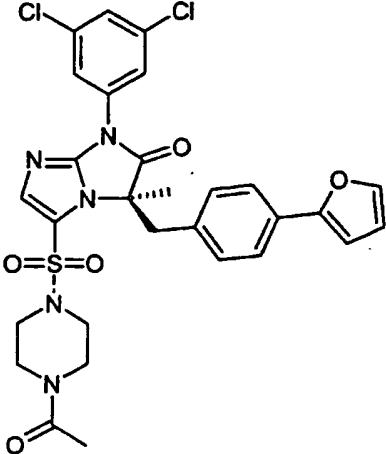
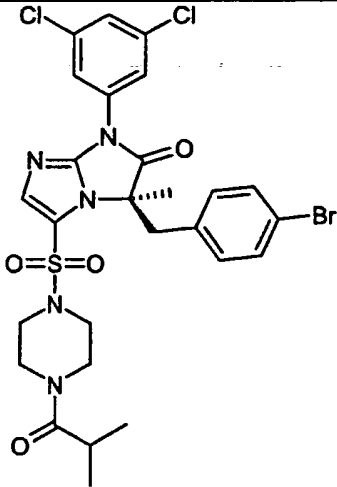
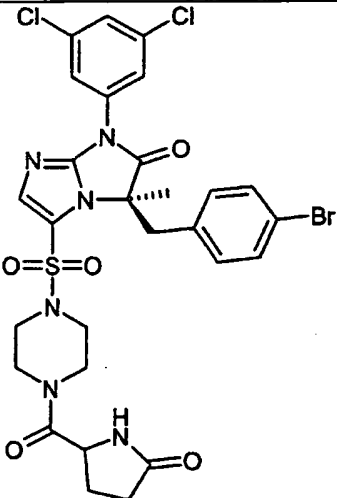
147		123.6-125.1
148		51.6-53.0
149		not determined

150		foam
151		not determined
152		amorphous

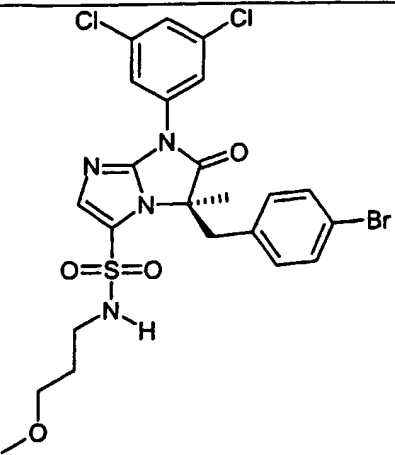
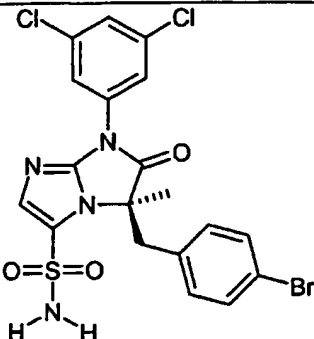
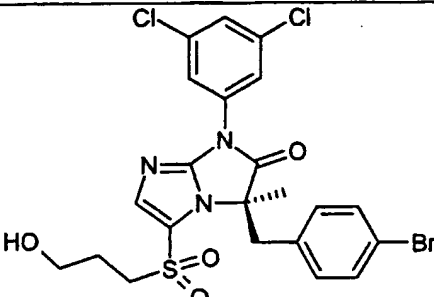
153		83.7-85.3
154		167-169
155		foam

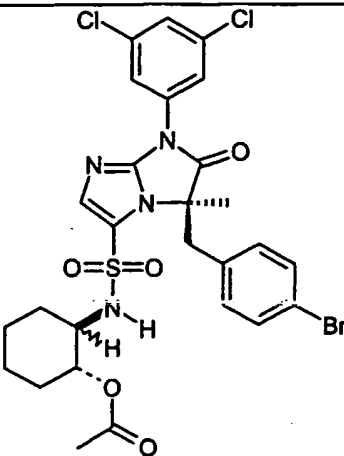
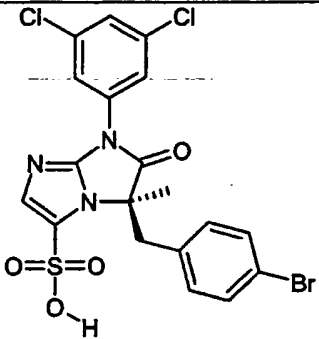
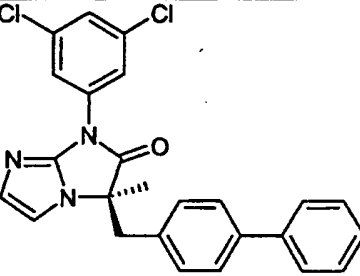
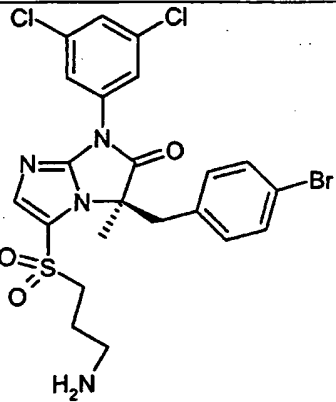
156		170-174
157		not determined

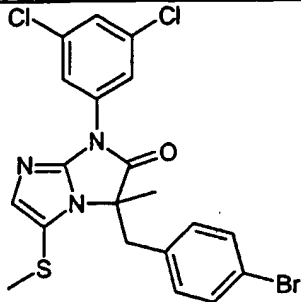
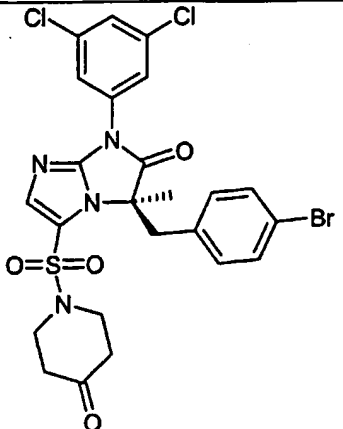
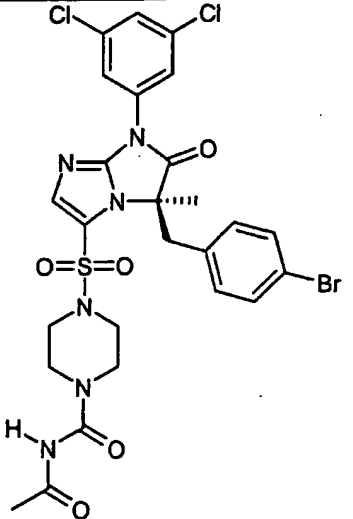
158		foam
159		resin
160		foam

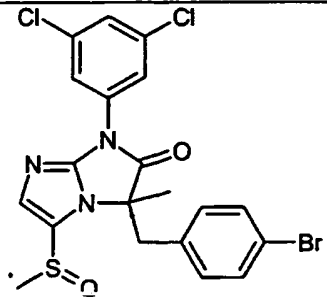
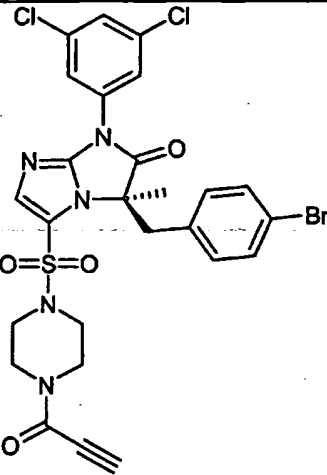
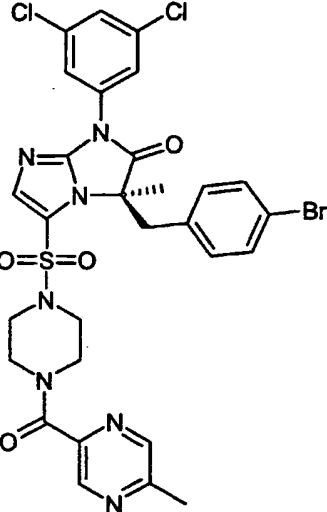
161		not determined
162		foam
163		not determined

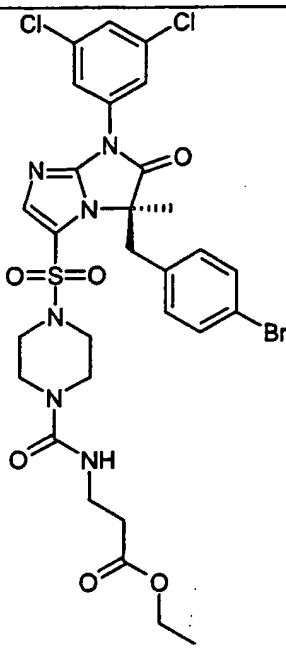
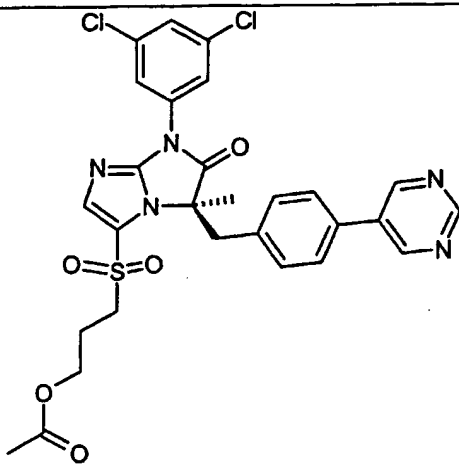


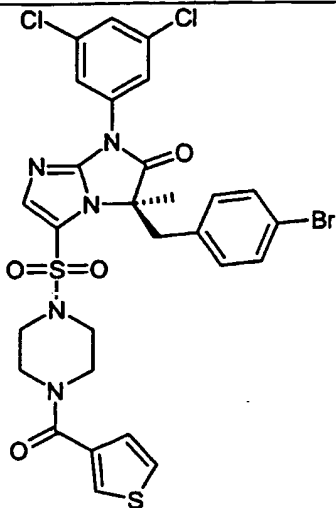
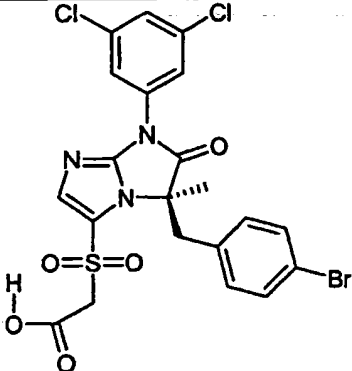
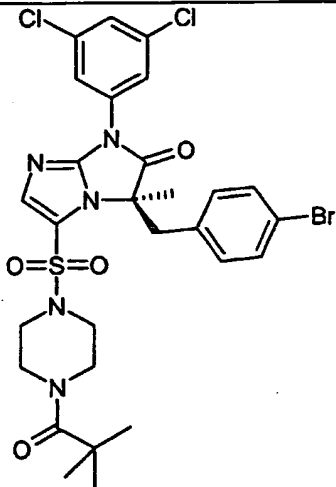
164		not determined
165		not determined
166		112.6-113.6

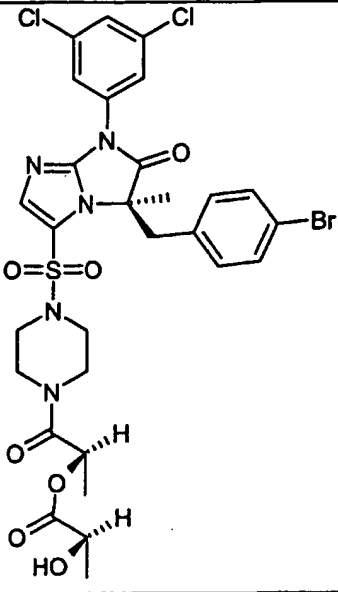
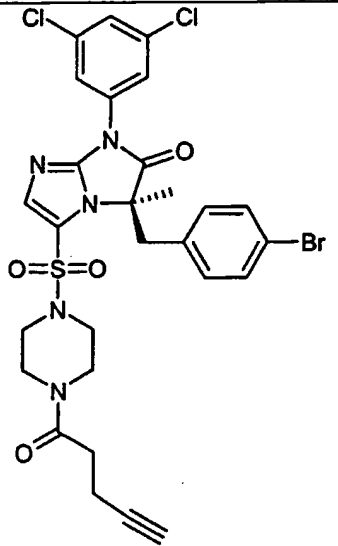
167		foam
168		not determined
169		51.8-53.1
170		75

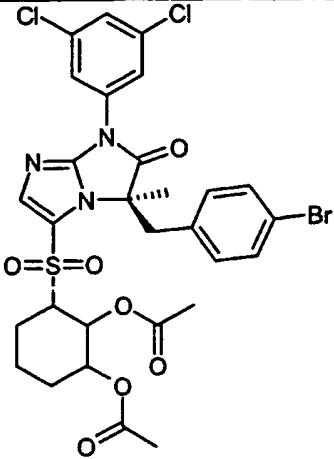
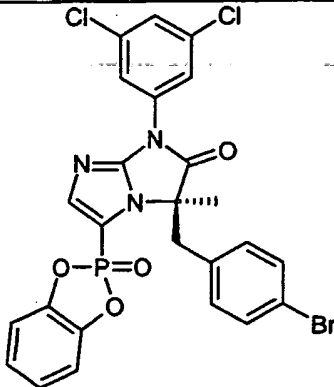
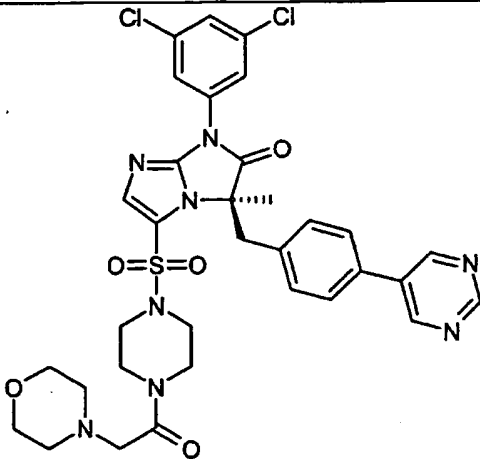
171		not determined
172		not determined
173		51-52

174		not determined
175		not determined
176		not determined

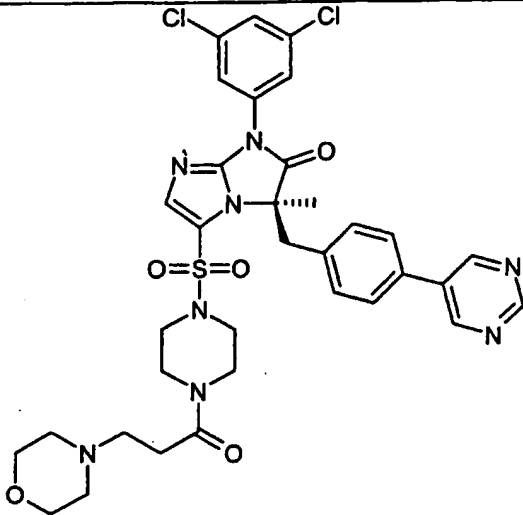
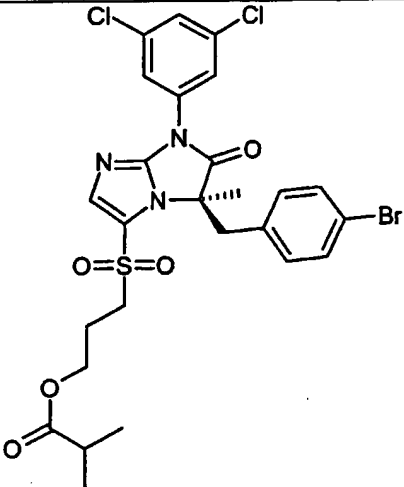
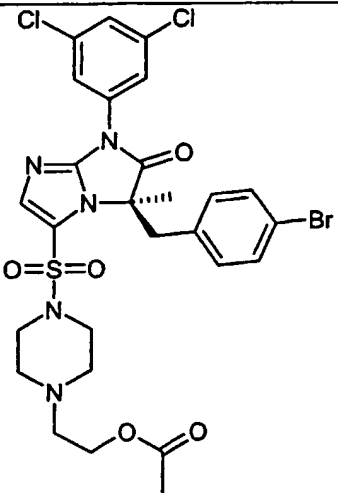
177	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 177: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C4, and a 4-(ethoxycarbonyl)phenyl group at C5. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonyl group at C2, which is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further connected to an amide group, which is finally connected to an ethyl ester group.</p>	resin
178	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 178: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-(pyridin-2-yl)phenyl group at C4, and a 4-(acetoxy)phenyl group at C5. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonyl group at C2, which is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further connected to an amide group, which is finally connected to an ethyl ester group.</p>	not determined

179		not determined
180		resin
181		foam

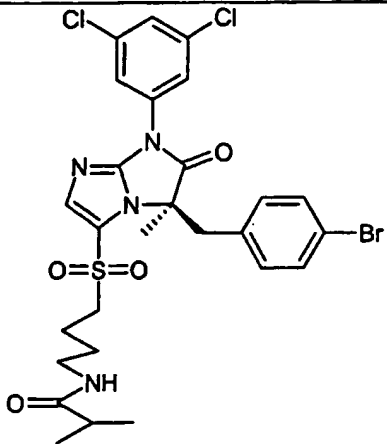
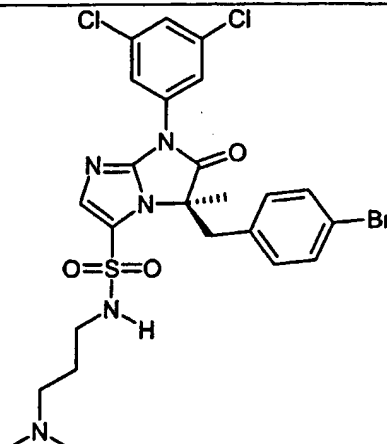
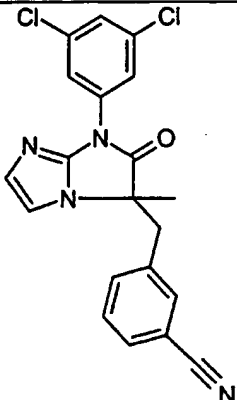
182	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 182: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5, and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is connected to a piperidine ring, which is further connected to a chiral center. This chiral center is part of a side chain containing a carboxylic acid group and a hydroxyl group, both shown with stereochemistry (wedges and dashes).</p>	not determined
183	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 183: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5, and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is connected to a piperidine ring, which is further connected to a chiral center. This chiral center is part of a side chain containing a carboxylic acid group and a hydroxyl group, both shown with stereochemistry (wedges and dashes).</p>	80.5-85.5

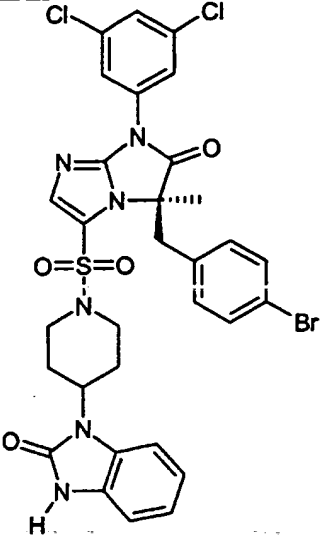
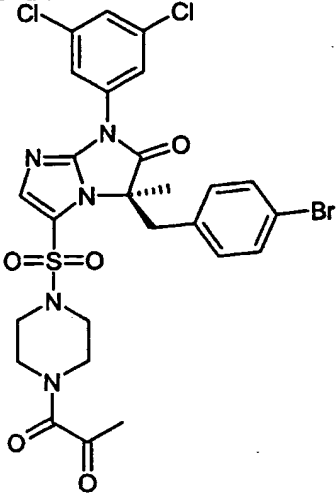
184		not determined
185		foam
186		resin

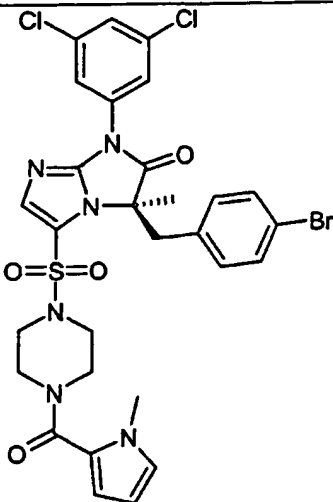
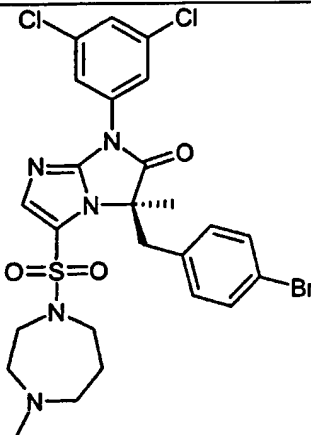
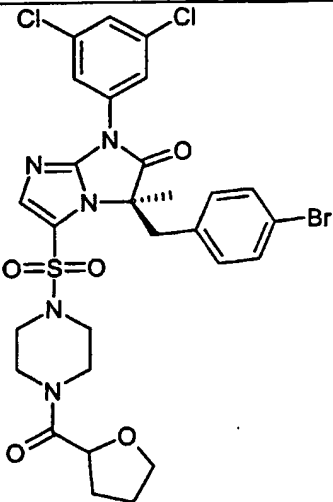


187		resin
188		not determined
189		foam

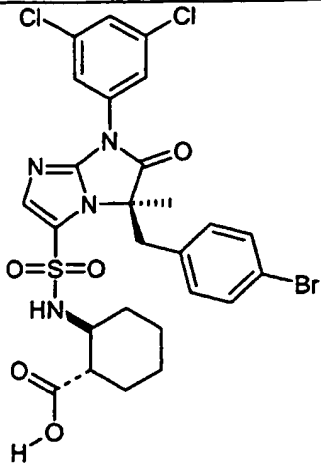
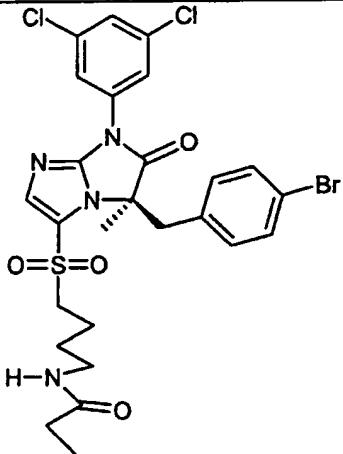
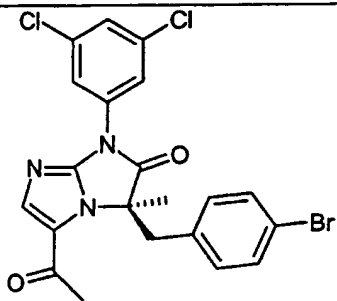
190	 <chem>CC(=O)O[C@H]1CCCC[C@H]1NS(=O)(=O)c2cc(Cl)c(Cl)cn2C(=O)N3C=CN(C3Cc4ccc(Br)cc4)C5=CC=CC=C5</chem>	foam
191	 <chem>CC(=O)N1CC[C@H]2CC[C@H](C1)N(C2)S(=O)(=O)c3cc(Cl)c(Cl)cn3C(=O)N4C=CN(C4Cc5ccc(Br)cc5)C6=CC=CC=C6</chem>	foam
192	 <chem>CC1(C)C(=O)N2C=CN(C2N1Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)c4cc(Cl)c(Cl)cn4</chem>	not determined

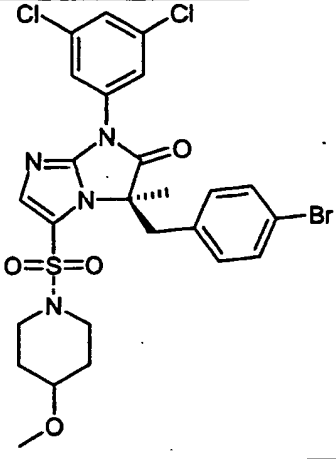
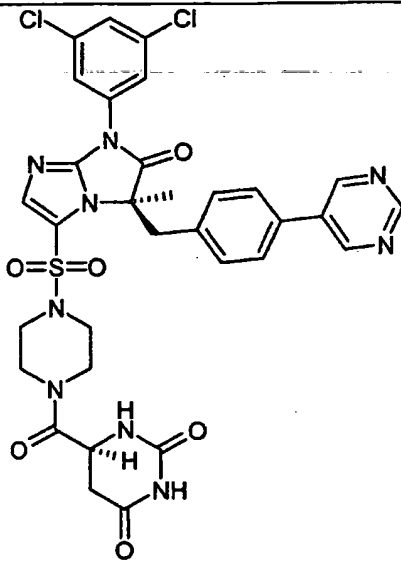
193		not determined
194		not determined
195		66.5-68.1

196	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 196: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(4-(2-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1H-benzotriazin-5-yl)piperidin-1-yl)sulfonyl group at C4.</p>	150-160
197	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 197: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydropyrimidin-2-yl)sulfonyl group at C4.</p>	not determined

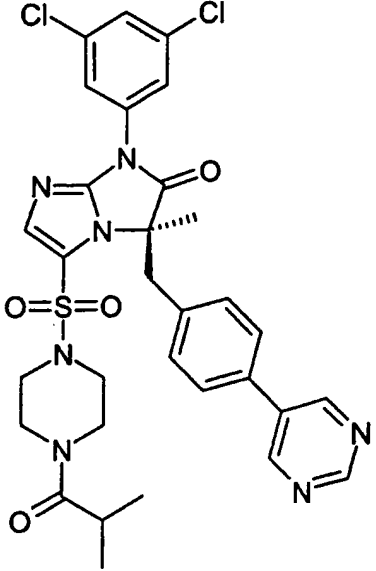
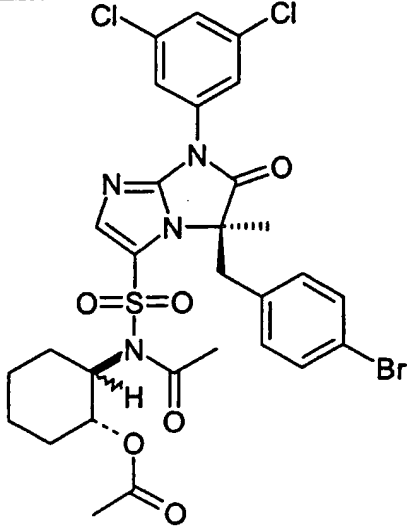
198		not determined
199		resin
200		not determined

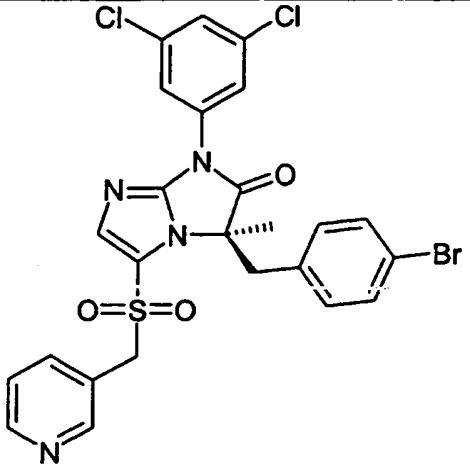
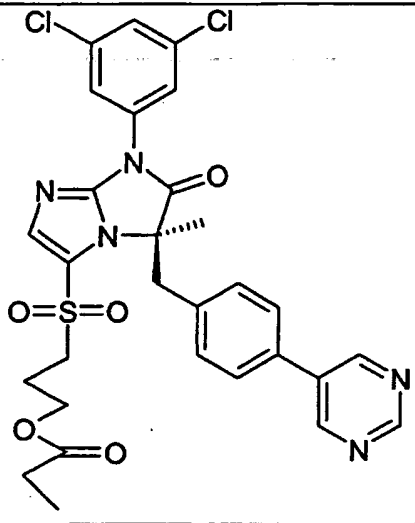
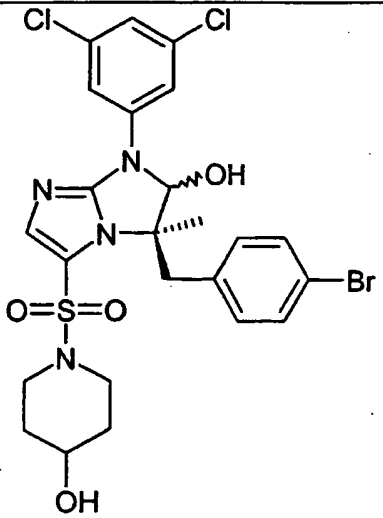
201	 <chem>O=C1N2C=NC(C1S(=O)(=O)N3CCN(C3)S(=O)(=O)c4ccsc4)C2Cc5ccc(Br)cc5</chem>	191-192
202	 <chem>O=C1N2C=NC(C1S(=O)(=O)CCCCN)C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3</chem>	foam
203	 <chem>O=C1N2C=NC(C1S(=O)(=O)CCOC)C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3</chem>	foam

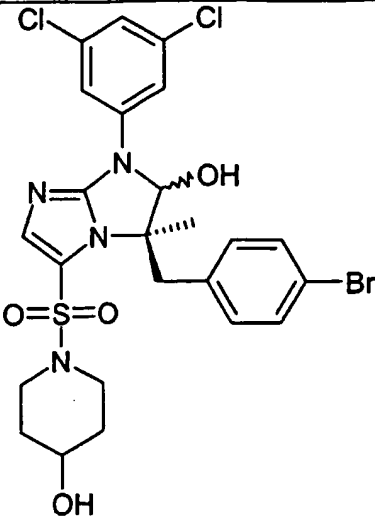
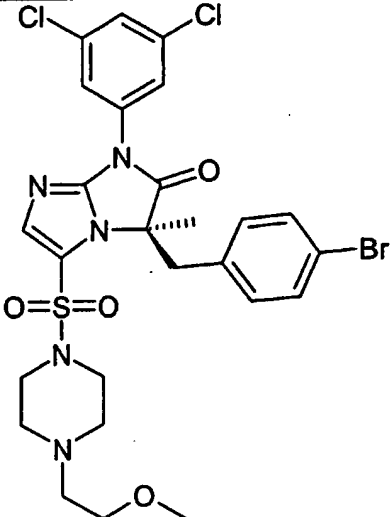
204		resin
205		not determined
206		oil

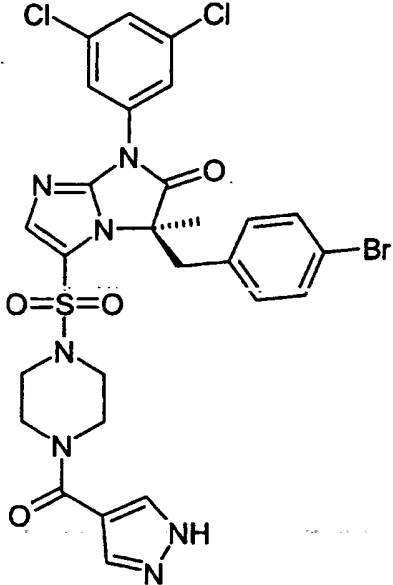
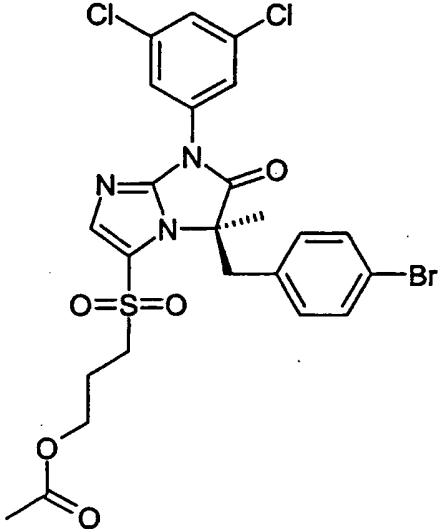
207	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 207: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-methoxyphenylsulfonamido group at C4. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C2.</p>	not determined
208	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 208: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-pyridin-2-ylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-(2-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-5-yl)sulfonamido group at C4. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C2.</p>	not determined

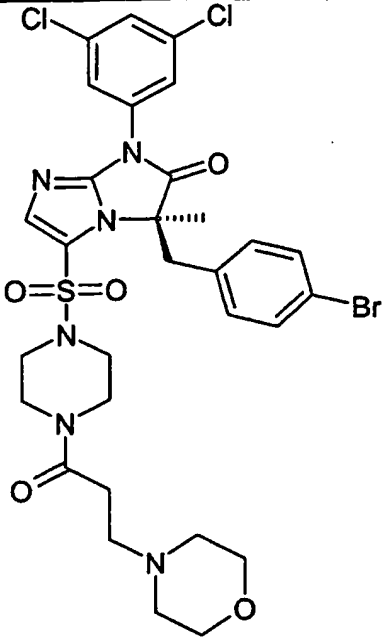
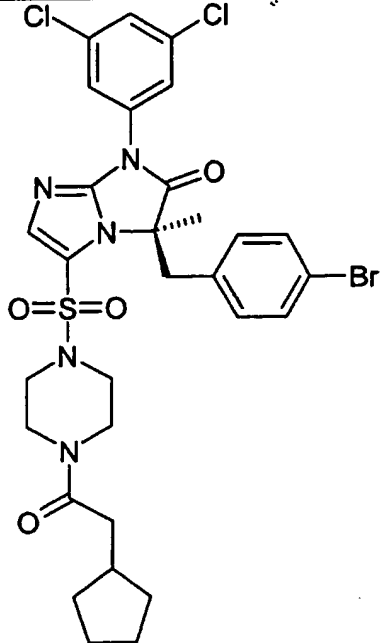


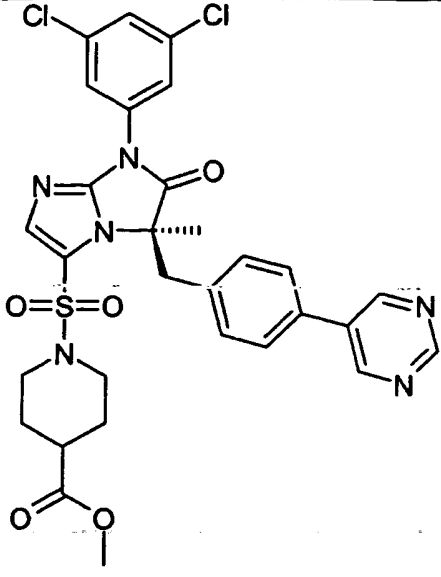
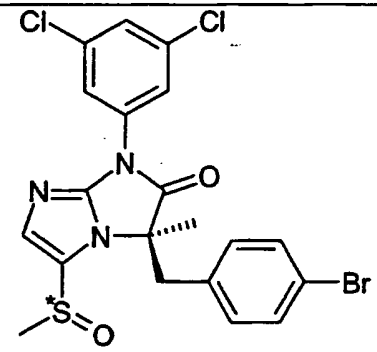
209	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 209: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at the 1-position, a 4-isobutyryl-4H-pyrimidin-2-yl group at the 4-position, and a (4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl)methyl group at the 5-position. The triazole ring has a carbonyl group at the 2-position and a methyl group at the 3-position.</p>	103-105
210	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 210: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at the 1-position, a (4-bromophenyl)methyl group at the 5-position, and a 4-((4S,6S)-4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrocyclohexa[1,1-b]furan-2-yl)-4H-pyrimidin-2-yl group at the 4-position. The triazole ring has a carbonyl group at the 2-position and a methyl group at the 3-position.</p>	foam

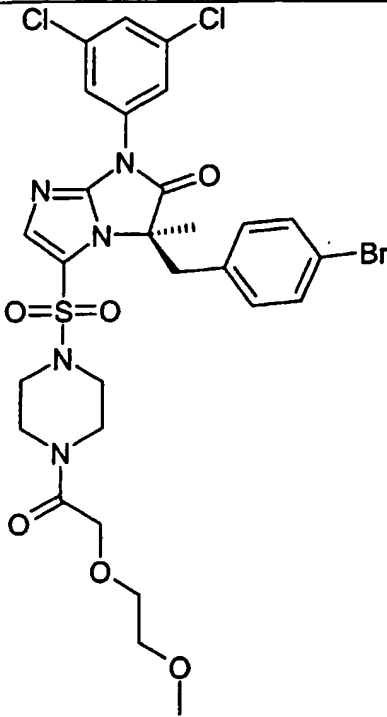
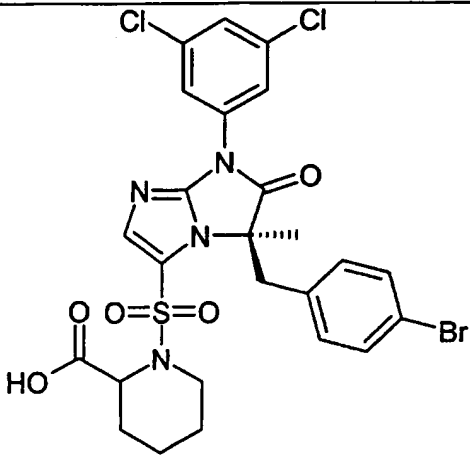
211		not determined
212		not determined
213		not determined

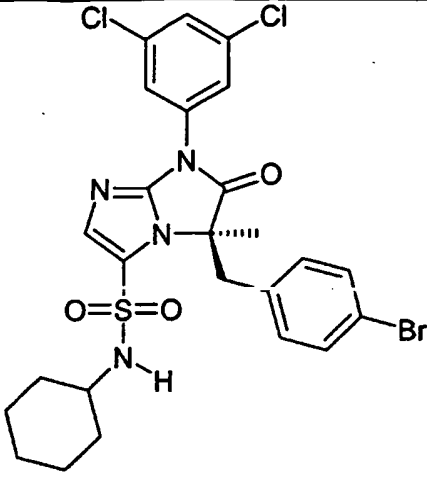
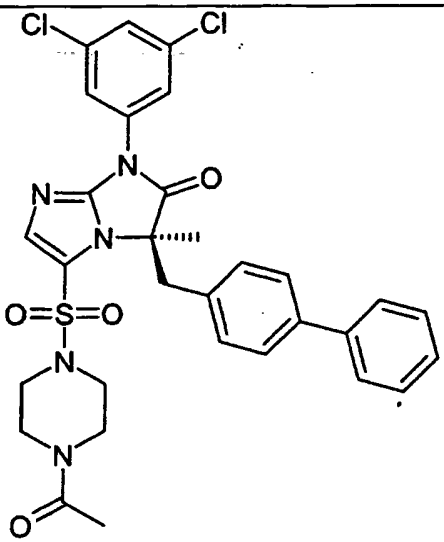
214	 <chem>Oc1ccn(c1S(=O)(=O)N2CCN(C2)C3=CN(C(=N3)C4=CC=C(C=C4)Br)C5=CC=C(C=C5)Cl)C6=CC=C(C=C6)Cl</chem>	187-189
215	 <chem>COCCN1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)C2=CN(C(=N2)C3=CC=C(C=C3)Br)C4=CC=C(C=C4)Cl</chem>	film

216	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 216: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 5-position is substituted with a sulfonyl group, which is further substituted with a piperazine ring. The piperazine ring is further substituted with a 1H-imidazole-4-carbonyl group.</p>	not determined
217	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 217: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 5-position is substituted with a sulfonyl group, which is further substituted with a 4-oxo-4H-pyran-2-yl group.</p>	foam

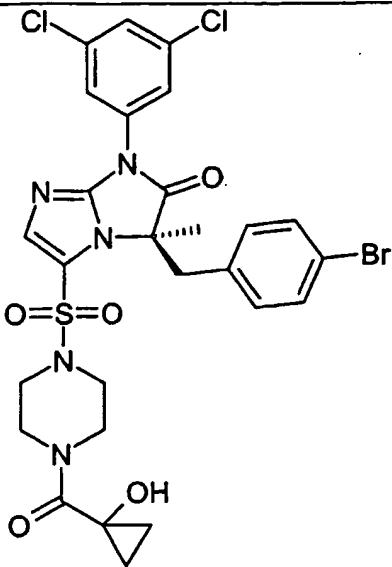
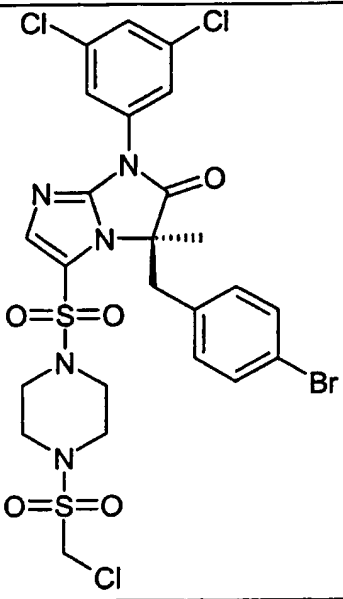
218	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 218: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(4-morpholinyl)butanoyl group at C5 via a sulfonyl linker. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C4.</p>	not determined
219	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 219: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 1-cyclopentylpropanoyl group at C5 via a sulfonyl linker. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C4.</p>	resin

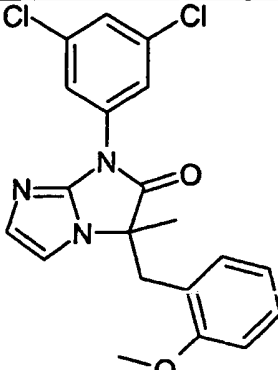
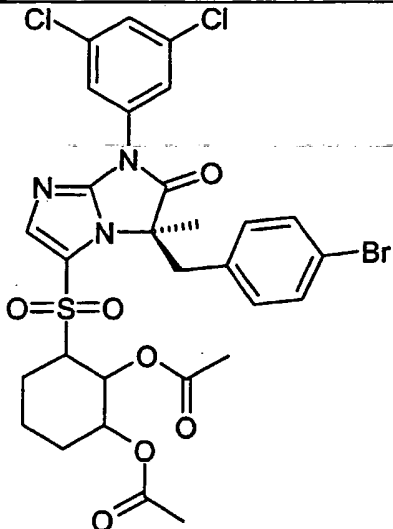
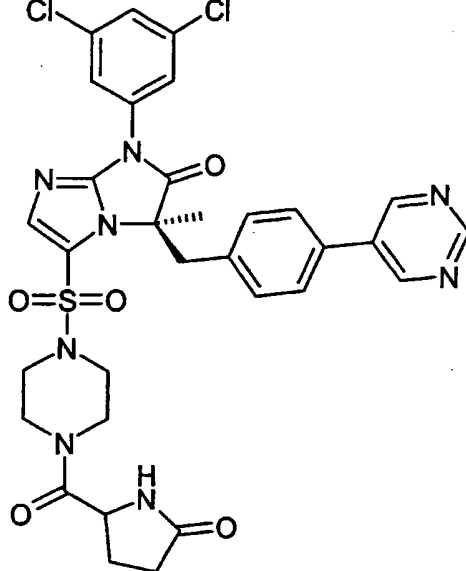
220	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 220: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)benzyl group at C5, and a 4-methoxyphenylsulfonyl group at C4. The C5 position is also substituted with a 4-methoxyphenyl group via a chiral center (indicated by a dashed bond).</p>	79.1-81.0
221	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 221: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromobenzyl group at C5, and a methylsulfonyl group at C4. The C5 position is also substituted with a 4-bromobenzyl group via a chiral center (indicated by a dashed bond).</p>	100.9-102.2

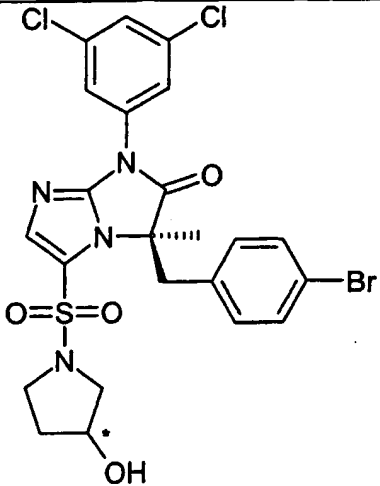
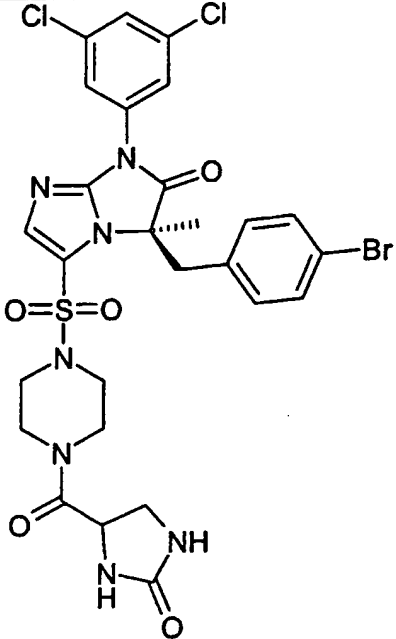
222	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 222: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-methoxybenzyl sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperazine ring, which is further linked to a 4-methoxybenzyl group.</p>	not determined
223	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 223: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(piperidin-4-yl)sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring with a carboxylic acid group at the 4-position.</p>	not determined

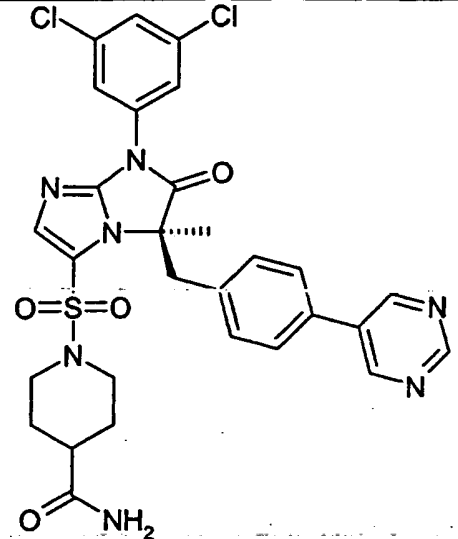
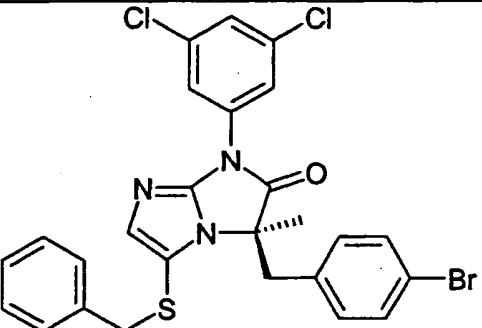
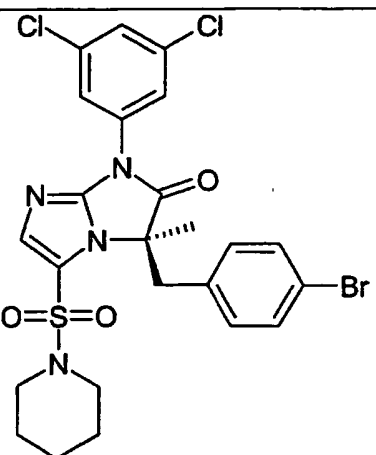
224	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 224: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at N1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at N2 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (wedge bond), and at C5 with a sulfonamide group (-SO<sub>2</sub>NH-cyclohexyl).</p>	foam
225	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 225: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at N1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at N2 with a biphenylmethyl group (wedge bond), and at C5 with a sulfonamide group (-SO<sub>2</sub>N-cyclohexylmethyl).</p>	resin

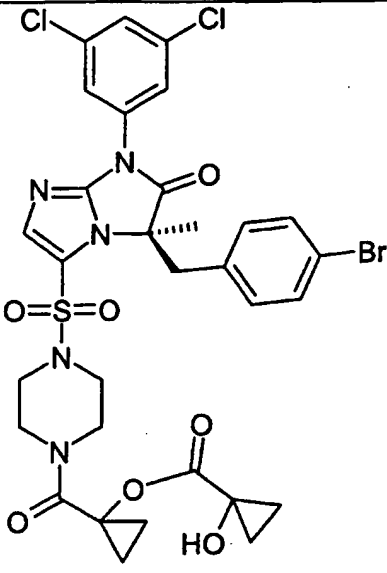
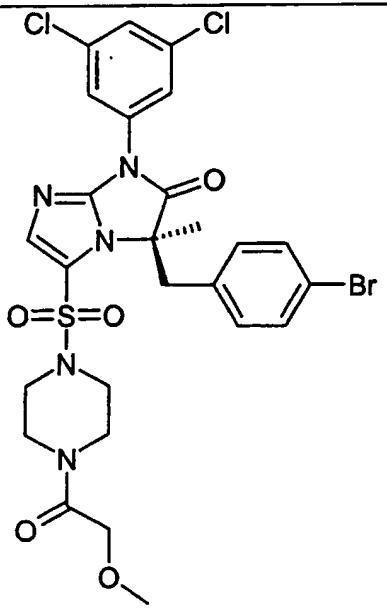


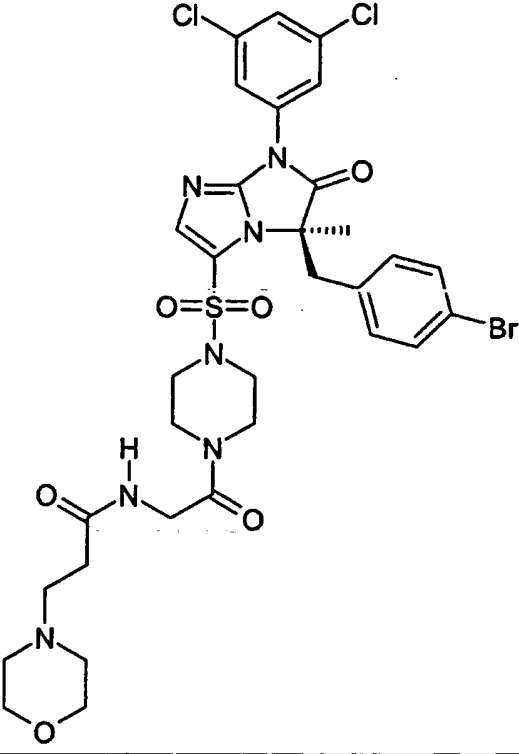
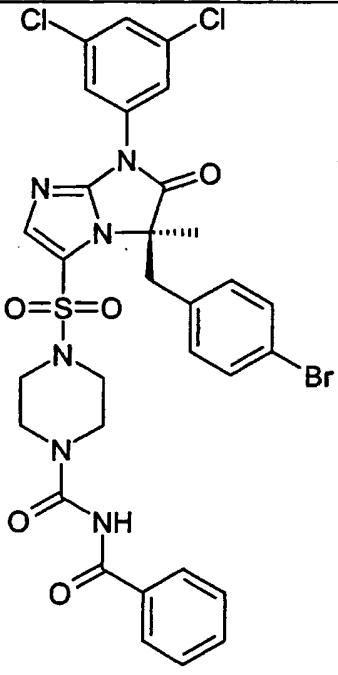
226	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 226: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-1-piperazinylsulfonyl group at C4. The C2 position also bears a 1-hydroxy-2-methylcyclopropyl group (wedged bond).</p>	not determined
227	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 227: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a 4-(4-chlorophenyl)-1-piperazinylsulfonyl group at C4. The C2 position also bears a 4-chlorophenylmethyl group (wedged bond).</p>	170-172

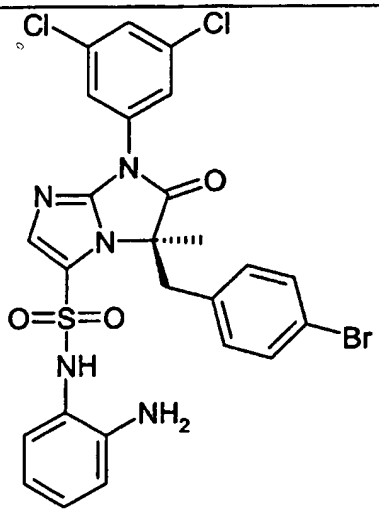
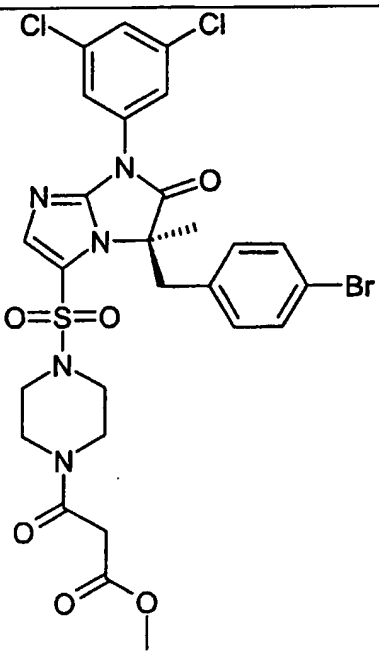
228		114.9-116.0
229		not determined
230		not determined

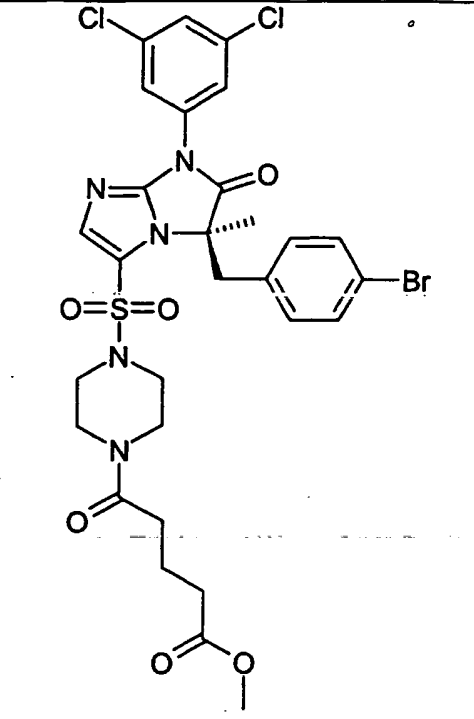
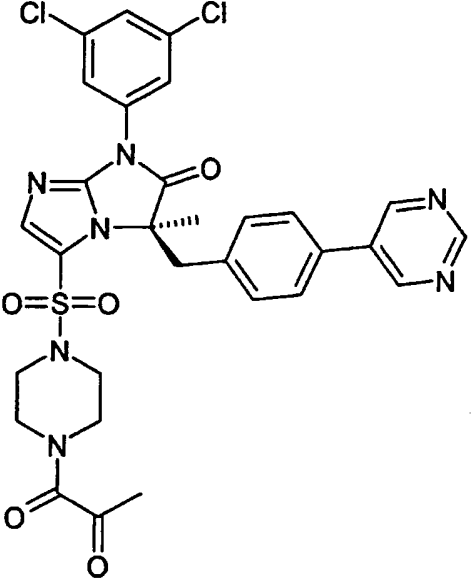
231	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 231: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at position 3 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond), and at position 4 with a sulfonamide group (-SO<sub>2</sub>-N-cyclopentyl-2-ol). The cyclopentyl ring has a hydroxyl group (-OH) at the 2-position.</p>	foam
232	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 232: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at position 3 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond), and at position 4 with a sulfonamide group (-SO<sub>2</sub>-N-piperidine-2-yl). The piperidine ring is further substituted at the 2-position with a 2-oxo-1,3-dihydro-2H-imidazol-4-yl group.</p>	not determined

233		not determined
234		gummy solid
235'		not determined

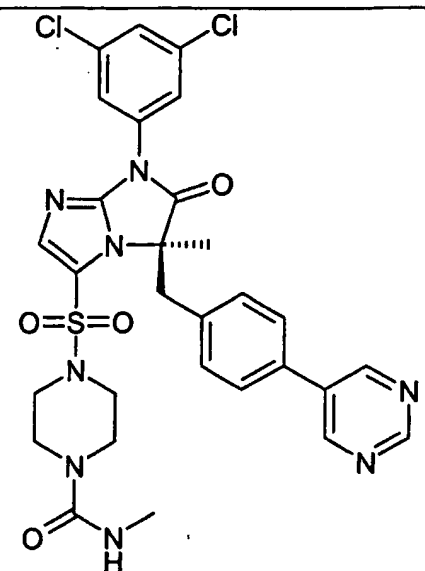
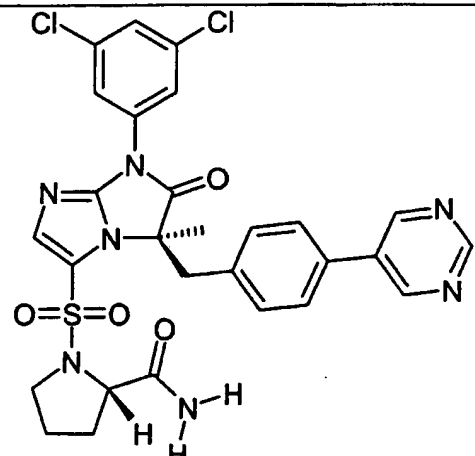
236	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 236: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a 4-(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl group at C4. The C2 position is also substituted with a 1-hydroxy-2-(cyclopropylmethyl)ethyl ester group.</p>	not determined
237	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 237: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a 4-(4-methoxyphenyl)sulfonyl group at C4. The C2 position is also substituted with a 1-methoxy-2-(cyclopropylmethyl)ethyl ester group.</p>	resin

238	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 238: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at position 1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at position 2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonyl group at position 4. The sulfonyl group is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further linked to a carbonyl group. This carbonyl is part of a chain that includes a morpholine ring and another carbonyl group.</p>	foam
239	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 239: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at position 1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at position 2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonyl group at position 4. The sulfonyl group is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further linked to a carbonyl group. This carbonyl is part of a chain that includes a benzamide group.</p>	resin

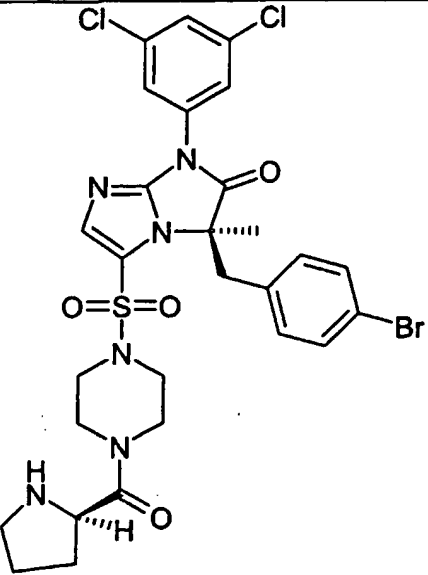
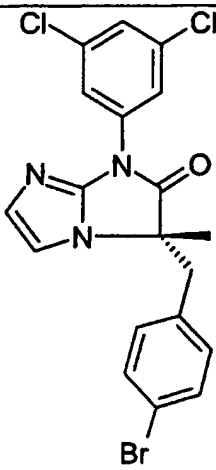
240	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 240: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to an NH group, which is further attached to a 2-amino-phenyl ring.</p>	resin
241	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 241: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to a nitrogen atom, which is part of a piperazine ring. The piperazine ring is further substituted with a 4-(2-methoxy-2-oxoethyl) group.</p>	resin

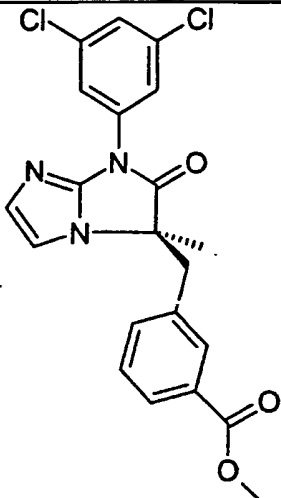
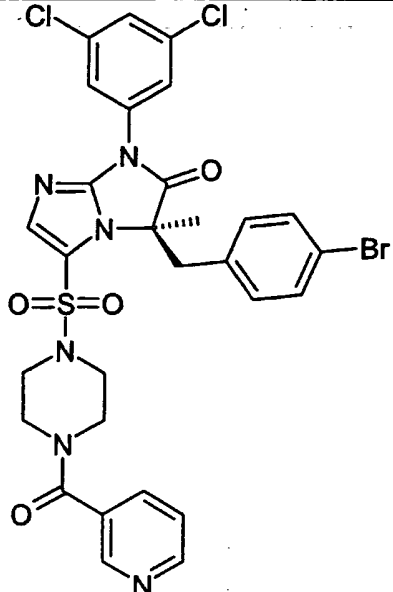
242	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 242: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C4 (indicated with a wedge bond), and a sulfonyl group at C5. The sulfonyl group is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further linked to a 4-oxopentanoate ester group.</p>	resin
243	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 243: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-(pyridin-2-yl)phenyl group at C4 (indicated with a wedge bond), and a sulfonyl group at C5. The sulfonyl group is connected to a piperazine ring, which is further linked to an acetyl group.</p>	not determined

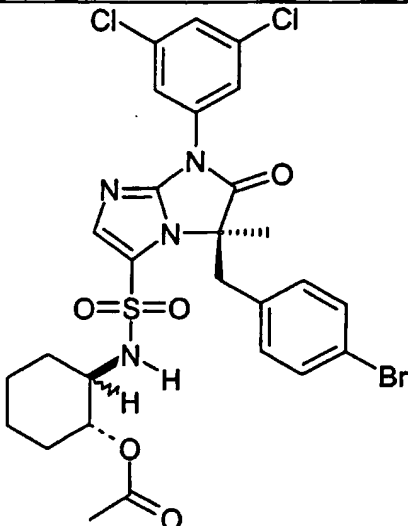
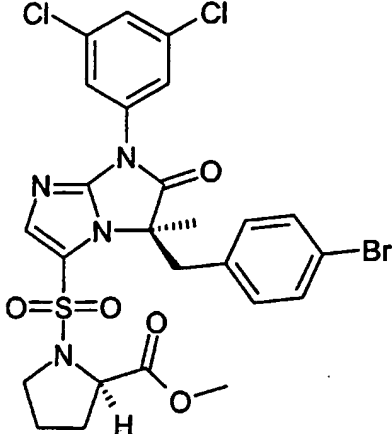


244	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 244: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 3 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, at position 4 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, and at position 5 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 1 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 2 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group.</p>	resin
245	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 245: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 3 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, at position 4 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, and at position 5 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 1 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 2 with a 4-(4-pyridyl)benzyl group.</p>	100 - 102

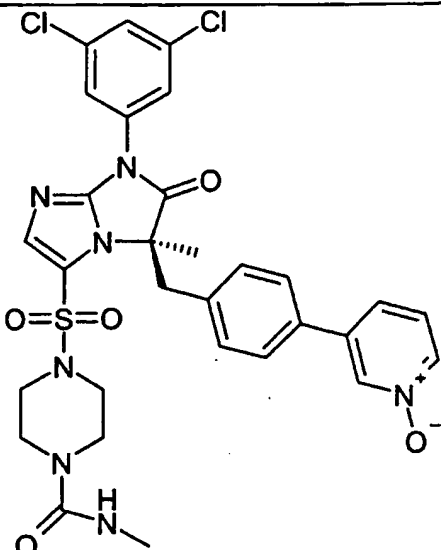
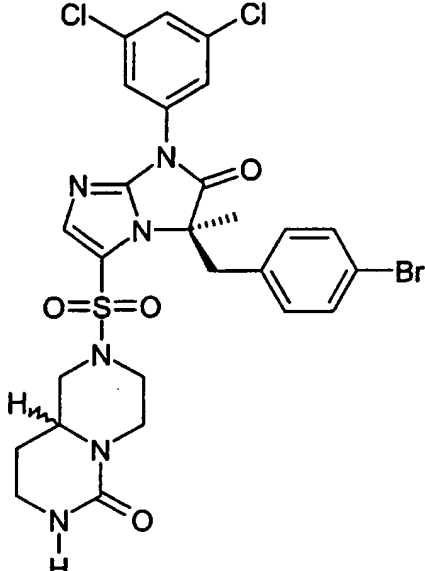
246	 <chem>O=C1N(C2=CC(=CC=C2Cl)Cl)C(C3=CC(=CC=C3Br)C1)S(=O)(=O)N4CCCCC4O</chem>	67.2-68.5
247	 <chem>O=C1N(C2=CC(=CC=C2Cl)Cl)C(C3=CC(=CC=C3Br)C1)S(=O)(=O)N4CCCCC4NC(=O)O</chem>	not determined
248	 <chem>O=C1N(C2=CC(=CC=C2Cl)Cl)C(C3=CC(=CC=C3Br)C1)S(=O)(=O)CCCC(=O)O</chem>	foam

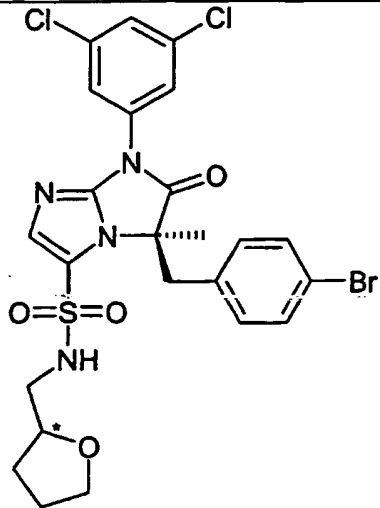
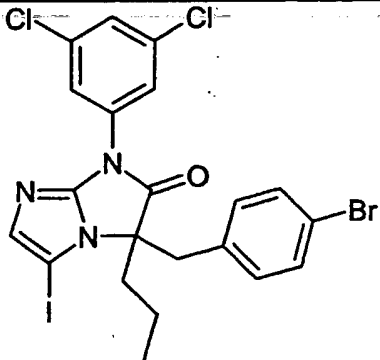
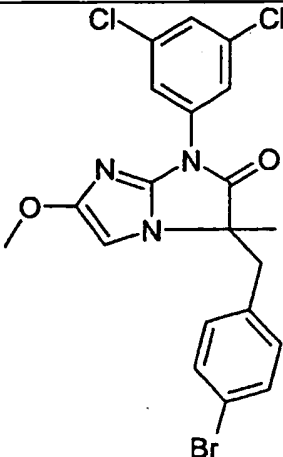
249	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 249: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring, which is further linked to a pyrrolidine ring via a carbonyl group. The pyrrolidine ring has a hydrogen atom at the chiral center (dashed bond).</p>	foam
250	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 250: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a methyl group at C2 (solid wedge), and a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (dashed bond).</p>	not determined

251		foam
252		not determined

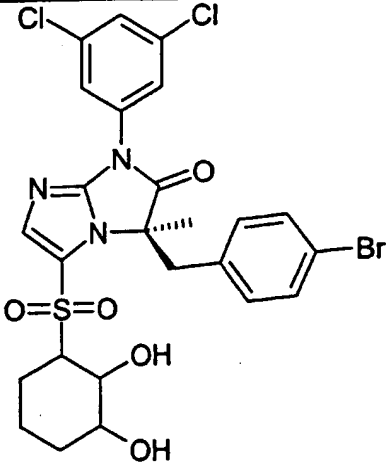
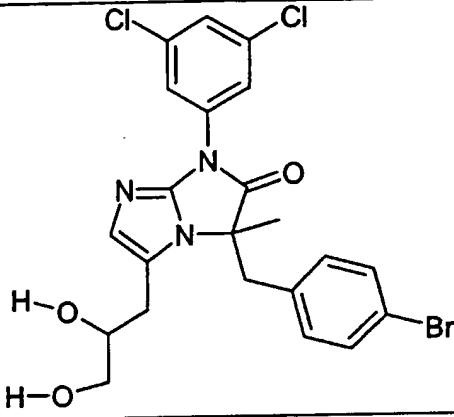
253	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 253: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is attached to a cyclohexane ring, which also has an acetate group at the adjacent position. Stereochemistry is indicated with wedges and dashes.</p>	foam
254	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 254: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is attached to a pyrrolidine ring, which also has a methyl ester group at the adjacent position. Stereochemistry is indicated with wedges and dashes.</p>	92-93.5

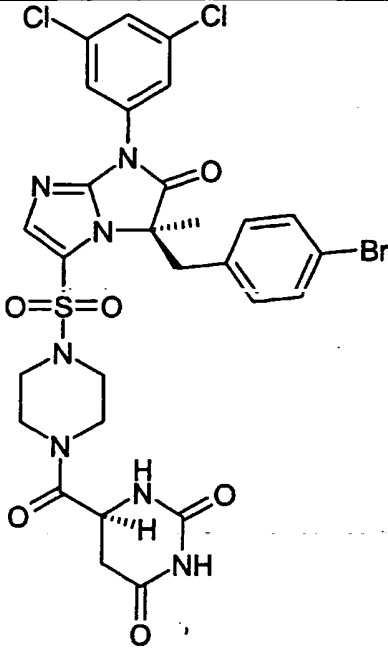
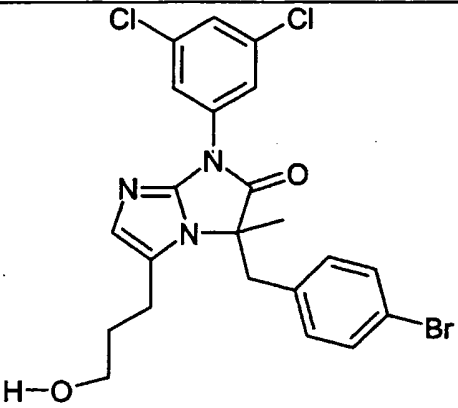


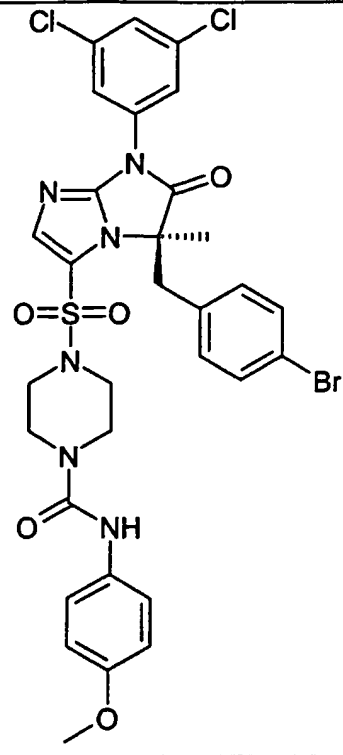
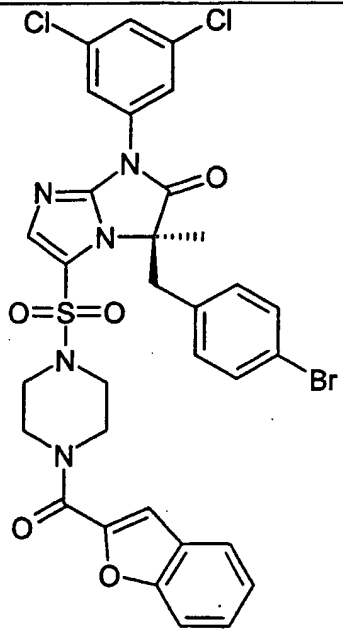
255	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 255: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-(4-nitrophenyl)methyl group at C2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a 4-(4-methylpiperazin-1-yl)sulfonyl group at C5.</p>	waxy solid
256	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 256: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a 4-(4,4-dihydro-2H-pyrimidin-2-yl)sulfonyl group at C5.</p>	foam

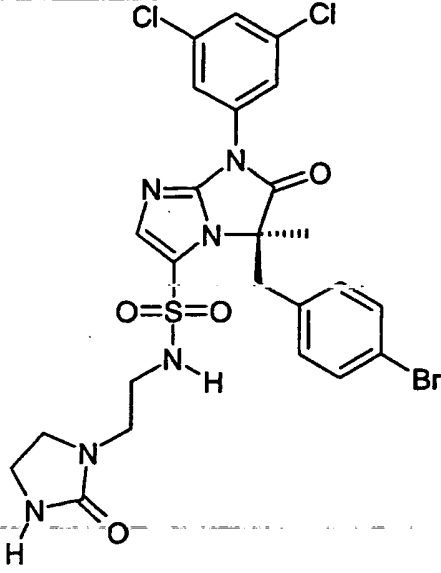
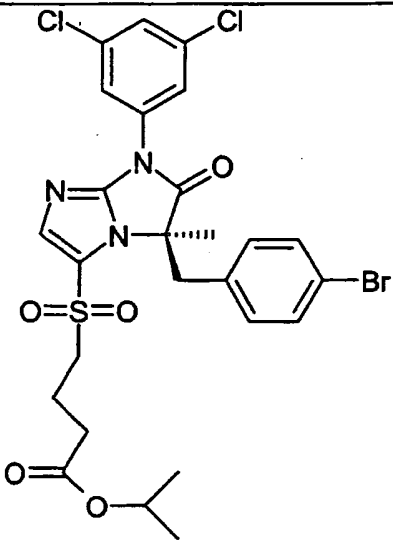
257		foam
258		resin
259		170-171

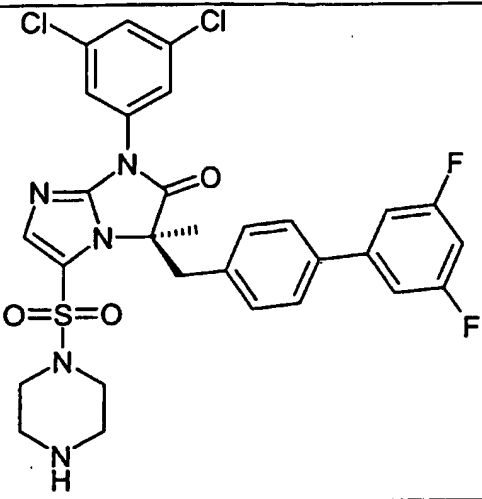
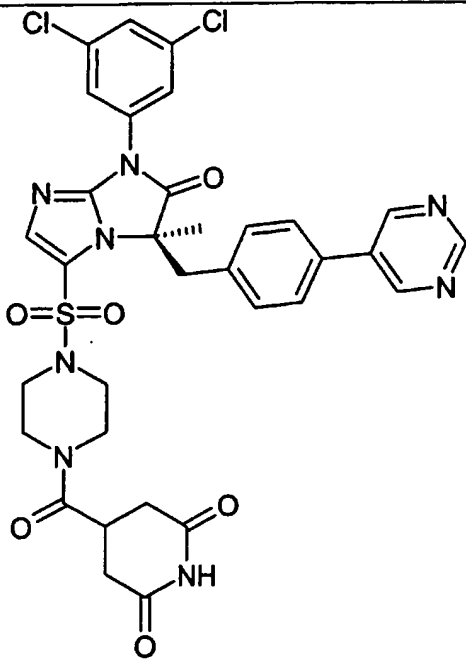


260	 <chem>Oc1cc(O)ccc1S(=O)(=O)c2cc3nnc(N(c4cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c4)C(=O)N3Cc5ccc(Br)cc5)c2</chem>	not determined
261	 <chem>CC1(C)N2C=CN(C2C(=O)N1Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)CCO</chem>	thick oil

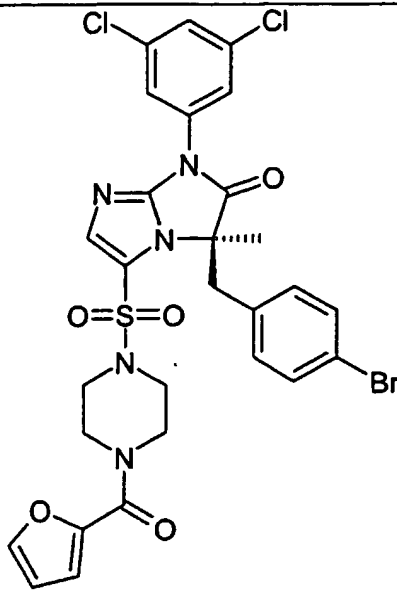
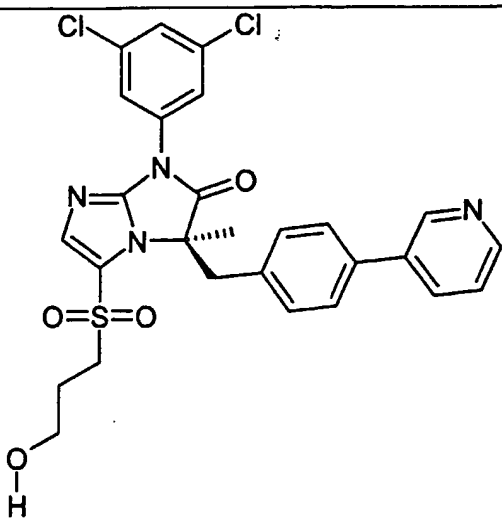
262	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 262: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a (4-bromophenyl)methyl group at C5, and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring, which is further linked to a 2,4,6-trioxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidin-5-yl group.</p>	not determined
263	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 263: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a (4-bromophenyl)methyl group at C5, and a 3-(4-hydroxybutyl) group at C4.</p>	foam

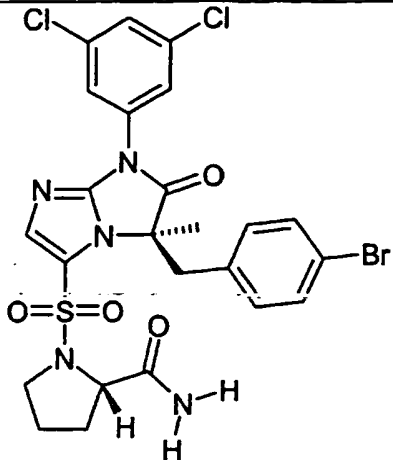
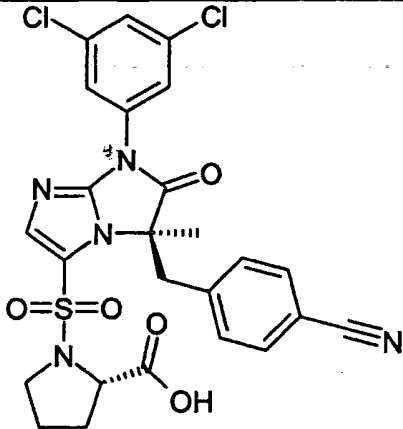
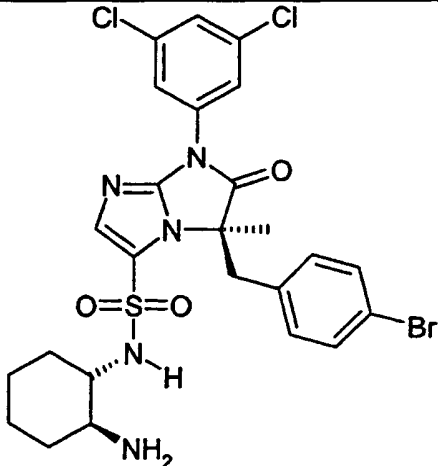
264	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 264: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (dashed bond), and a 4-methoxyphenylsulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring, which is further linked to an amide group connected to a 4-methoxyphenyl ring.</p>	111-114
265	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 265: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (dashed bond), and a 2-benzofuran-5-ylsulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group linked to a piperidine ring, which is further linked to an amide group connected to a 2-benzofuran-5-yl ring.</p>	176-178

266	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 266: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5, and a 1,3-dioxolane-2-carbonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonamide group at C2, which is further substituted with a 1,3-dioxolane-2-carbonyl group.</p>	resin
267	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 267: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C5, and a 1,3-dioxolane-2-carbonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is also substituted with a sulfonamide group at C2, which is further substituted with a 1,3-dioxolane-2-carbonyl group.</p>	oil

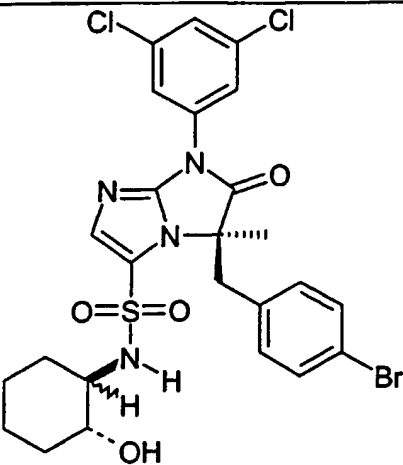
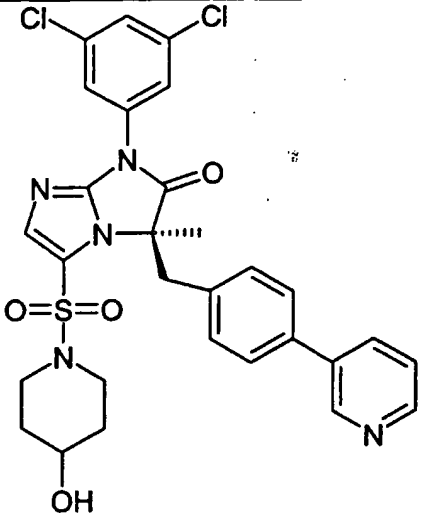
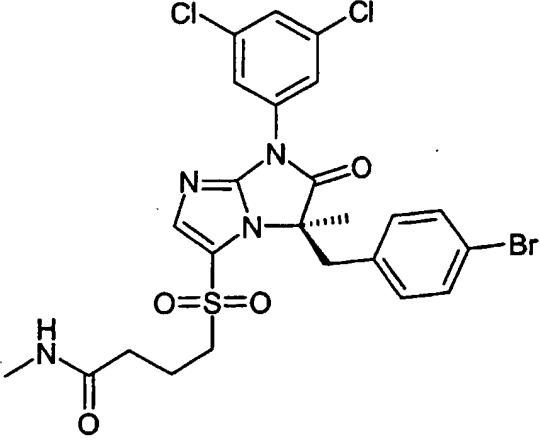
268	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N1C(=O)N2C=NC(S(=O)(=O)N3CCNCC3)C2)N1Cc1ccc(cc1)-c2cc(F)cc(F)c2</chem>	not determined
269	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N1C(=O)N2C=NC(S(=O)(=O)N3CCN(C3C(=O)NC4=CC(=O)NC4=O)C2)C1Cc1ccc(cc1)-c2ccnccn2</chem>	not determined

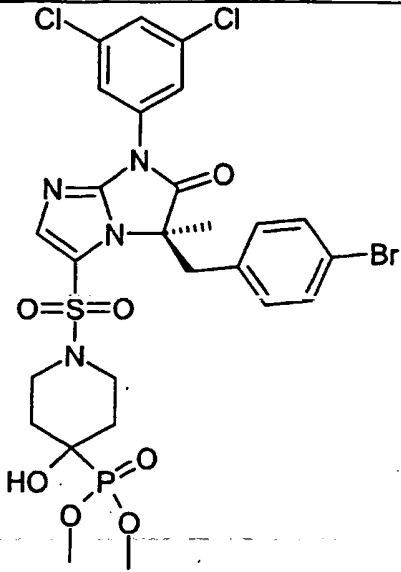
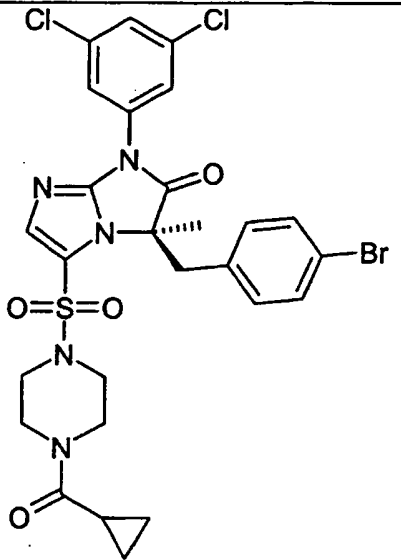
270	 <chem>O=C1N(C(=O)N1C2=CN=CN2C3=CC=C(C=C3)C4=CC=CC=C4C5=CC=CC=C5N6=CC=CC=C6)S(=O)(=O)N7CCCC7C8=CC=CC=C8C9=CC=CC=C9C10=CC=CC=C10</chem>	not determined
271	 <chem>O=C1N(C(=O)N1C2=CN=CN2C3=CC=C(C=C3)C4=CC=CC=C4C5=CC=CC=C5Br)C6C7=CC=CC=C7C8=CC=CC=C8</chem>	not determined
272	 <chem>O=C1N(C(=O)N1C2=CN=CN2C3=CC=C(C=C3)C4=CC=CC=C4Br)S(=O)(=O)N5CCCC5C6=CC=CC=C6C7=CC=CC=C7C8=CC=CC=C8</chem>	not determined

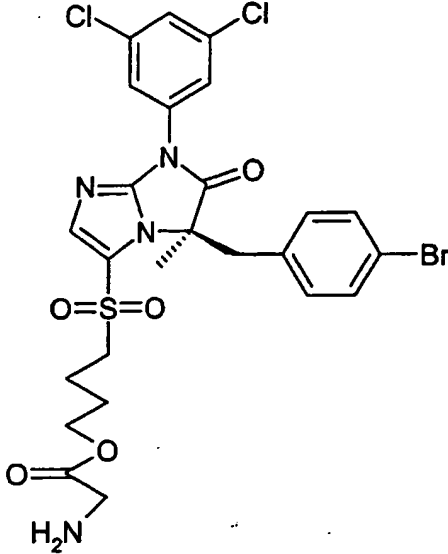
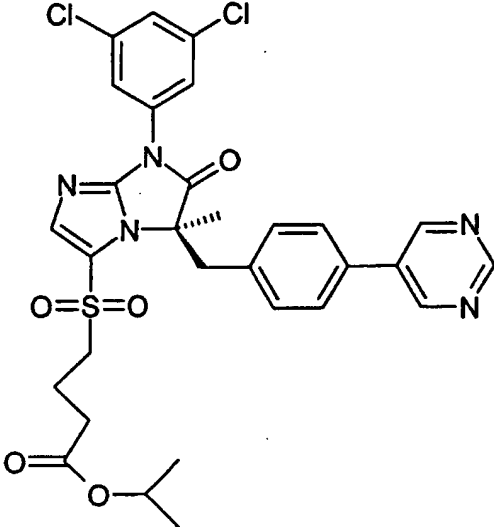
273		95-101
274		not determined

275		99.5-101
276		resin
277		foam

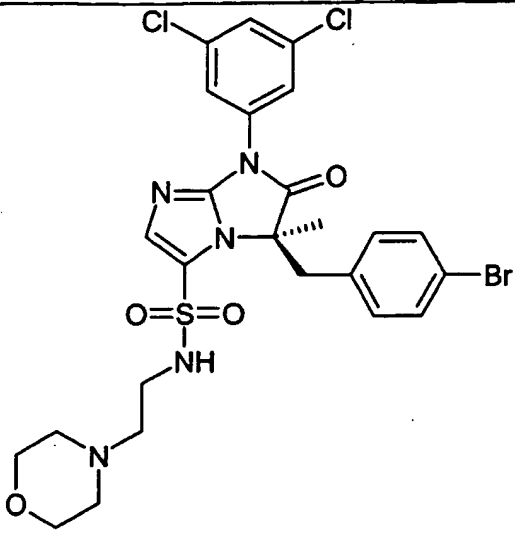
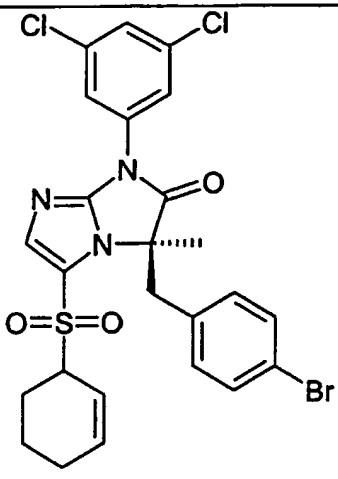


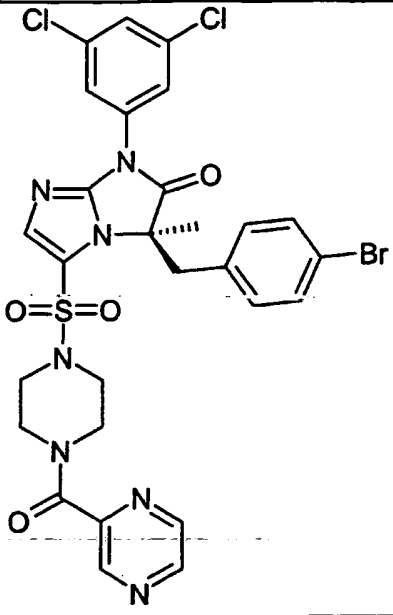
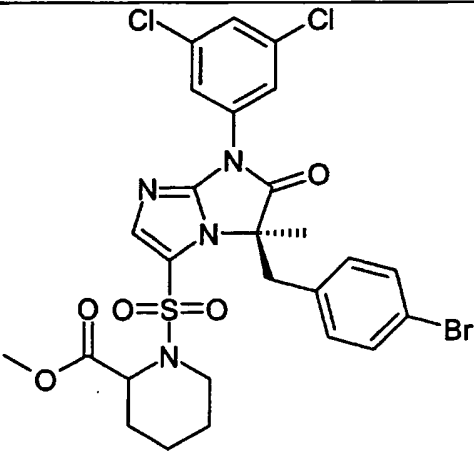
278		foam
279		110-115
280		oil

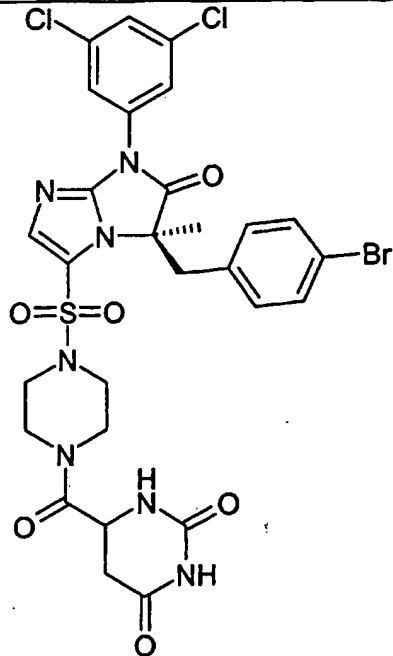
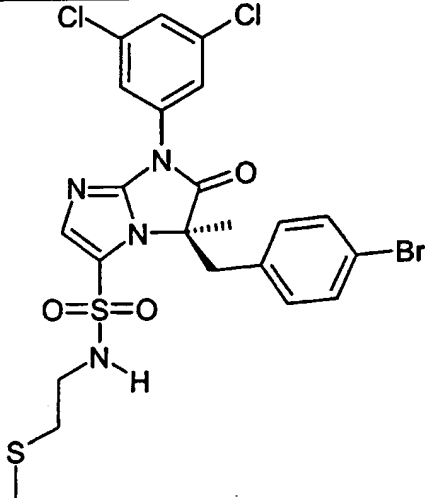
281	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 281: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-(dimethoxyphosphoryl)piperidin-1-ylsulfonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is fused to a five-membered lactam ring.</p>	foam
282	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 282: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C5, and a 4-(cyclopropylcarbonyl)piperidin-1-ylsulfonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is fused to a five-membered lactam ring.</p>	not determined

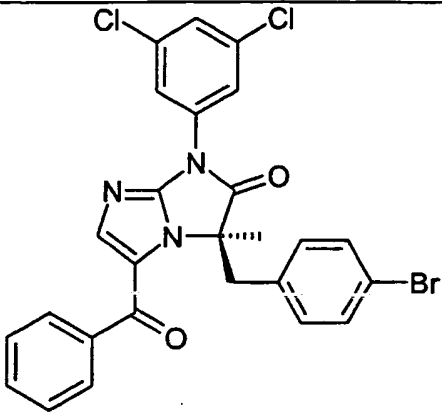
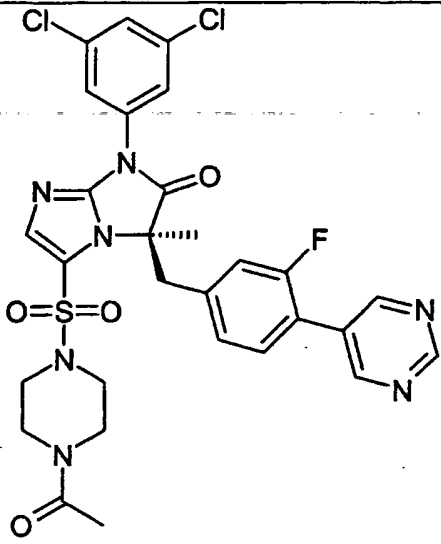
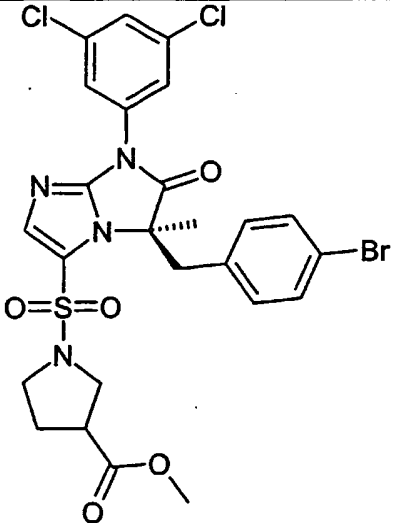
283	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 283: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, which is further substituted with a 4-aminobutyl group.</p>	not determined
284	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 284: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-pyridinyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, which is further substituted with a 4-isopropoxybutyl group.</p>	waxy solid

285	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N1C(=O)N2C=NC(S(=O)(=O)N3CCN(C(=O)N)CC3)N2C1Cc1ccc(Br)cc1)c1ccccc1</chem>	foam
286	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N1C(=O)N2C=NC(Br)N2C1Cc1ccc(Br)cc1)c1ccccc1</chem>	192-194
287	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N1C(=O)N2C=NC(S(=O)(=O)N3CCN(C(=O)C(F)F)CC3)N2C1Cc1ccc(Br)cc1)c1ccccc1</chem>	not determined

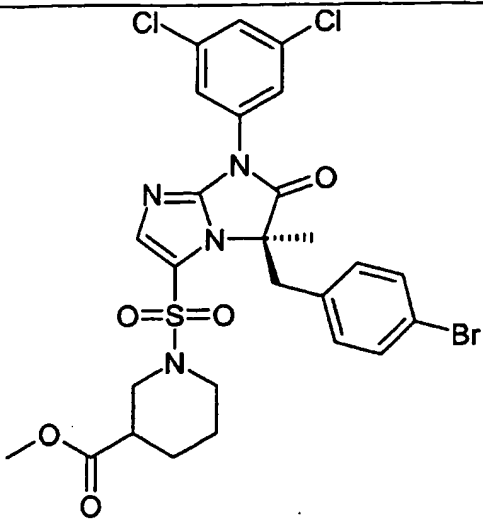
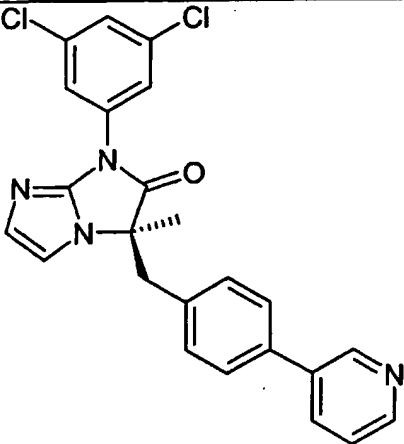
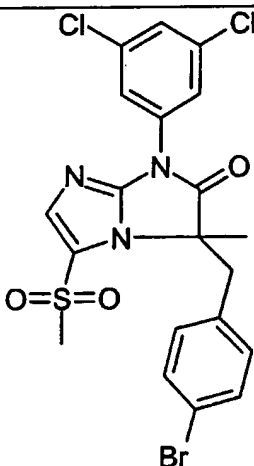
288		foam
289		not determined

290	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 290: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond). The 3-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, specifically a piperazine ring connected to a pyridine-2-carbonyl group via its nitrogen atom.</p>	not determined
291	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 291: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond). The 3-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, specifically a piperidine ring connected to a methyl ester group via its nitrogen atom.</p>	not determined

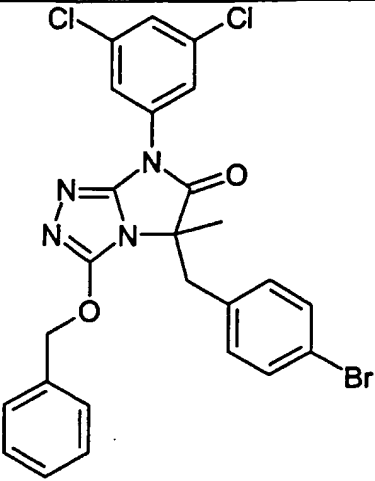
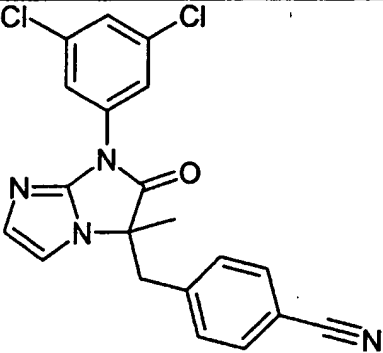
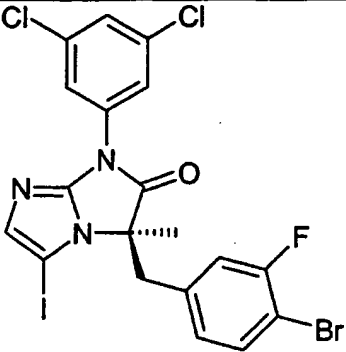
292	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 292: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to a piperidine ring, which is further attached to a 2,6-pyridinedione (phthalimide) moiety.</p>	not determined
293	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 293: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C4 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C5. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to a primary amine (NH), which is further attached to a 2-mercaptoethyl group (CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>SH).</p>	not determined

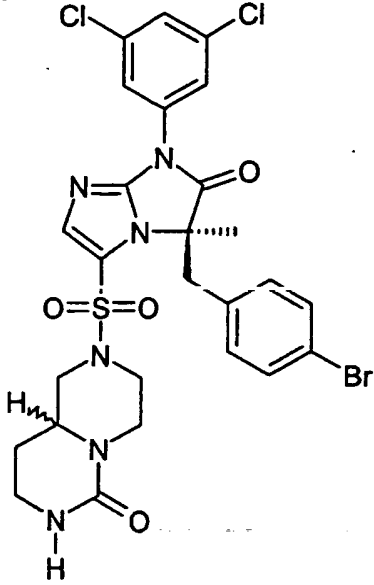
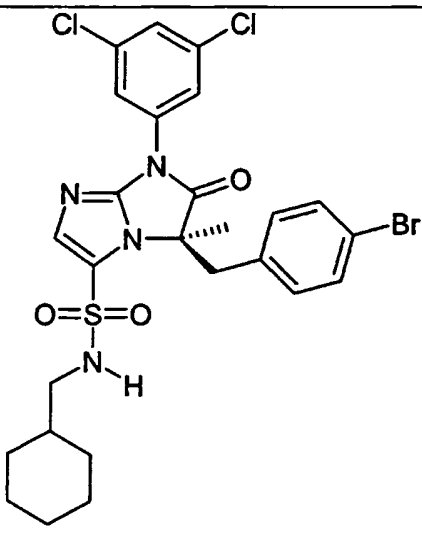
294		foam
295		resin
296		not determined

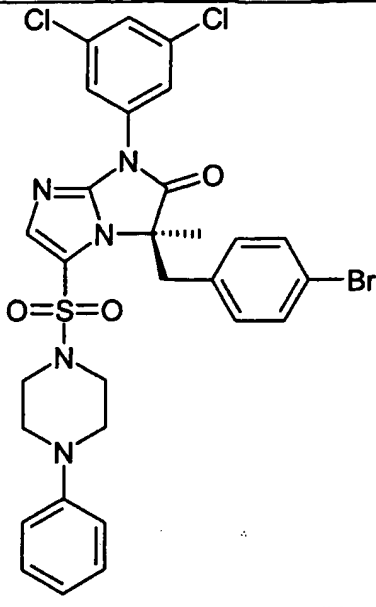
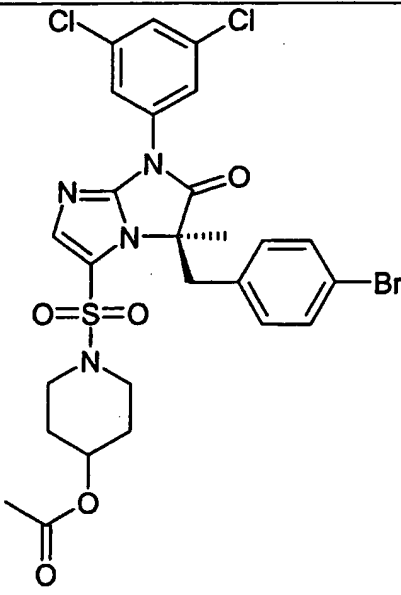


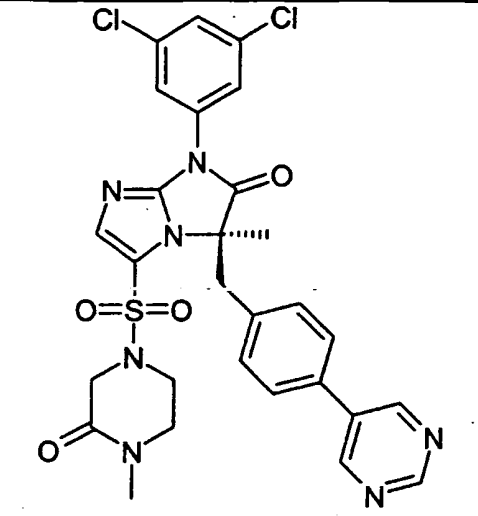
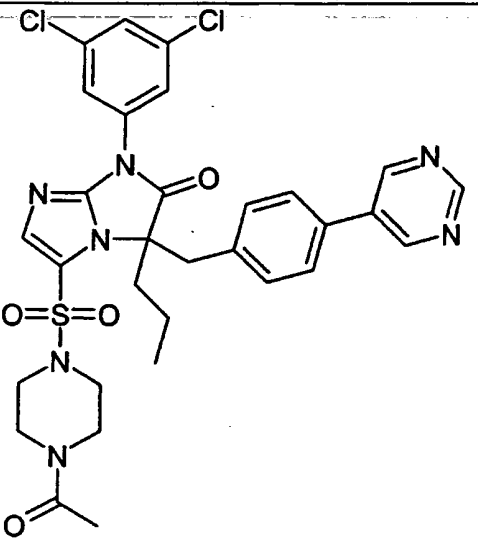
297		not determined
298		71.2-72.3
299		not determined

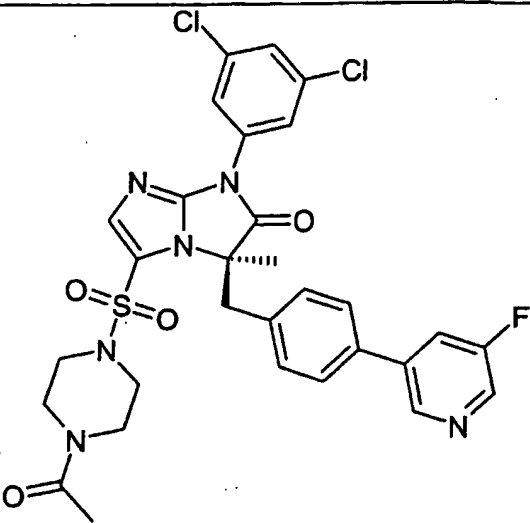
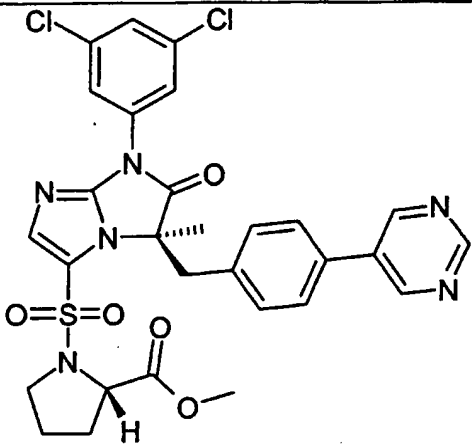
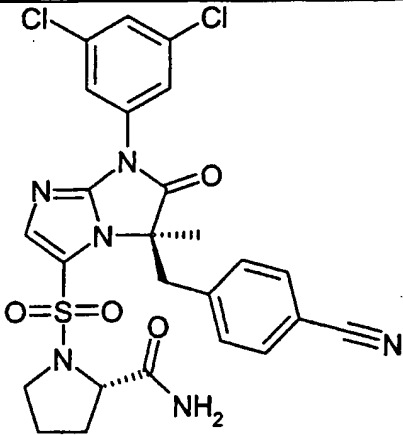
300	 <chem>NC(=O)CS(=O)(=O)c1ccn(c1=O)N(c2cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c2)Cc3ccc(Br)cc3</chem>	96-99
301	 <chem>COC(=O)[C@@H]1CCCN1S(=O)(=O)c2ccn(c2=O)N(c3cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c3)Cc4ccc(C#N)cc4</chem>	resin
302	 <chem>C1CCN(C1)S(=O)(=O)c2ccn(c2=O)N(c3cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c3)Cc4ccc(cc4-c5ccncc5)</chem>	201-202

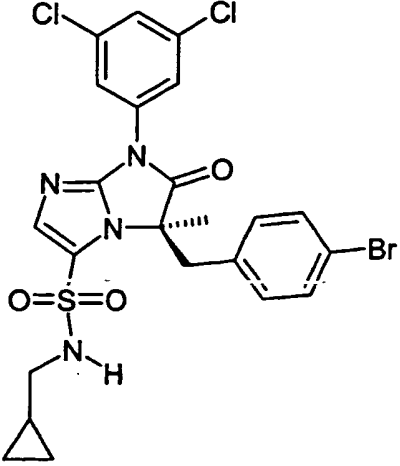
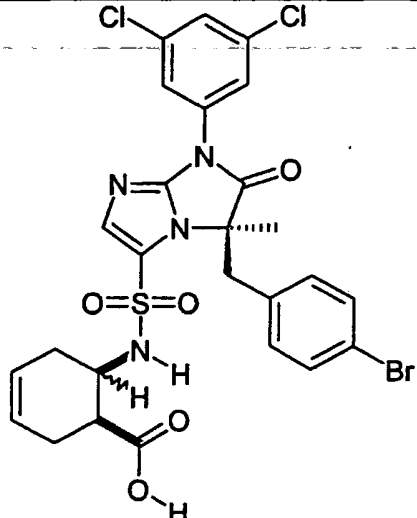
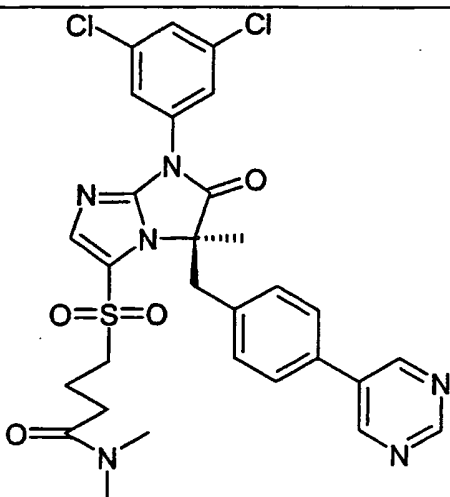
303		142-144
304		47.9-49.4
305		hard oil

306	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 306: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is further substituted with a 4-(2,6-dihydro-2H-pyrimidin-5(1H)-yl)methyl group. Stereochemistry is indicated with wedges and dashes at the triazole C2 and the pyrimidine C4 positions.</p>	foam
307	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 307: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenyl group at C2 (dashed bond), and a sulfonamide group at C4. The sulfonamide group is further substituted with a cyclohexylmethyl group. Stereochemistry is indicated with a dashed bond at the triazole C2 position.</p>	not determined

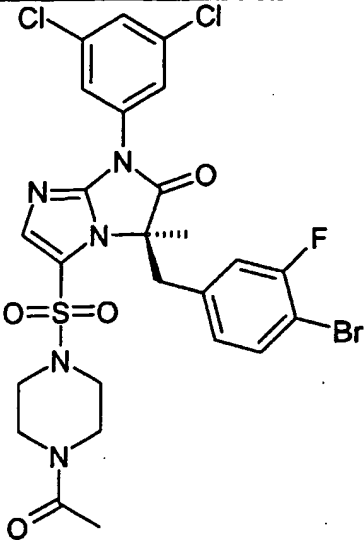
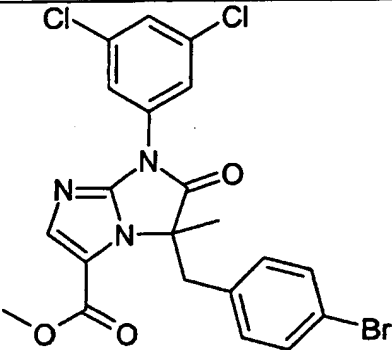
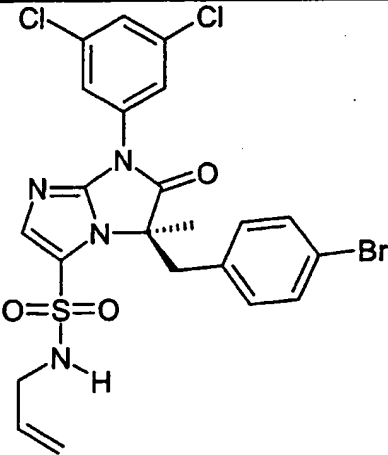
308	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 308: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at position 3 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond), and at position 4 with a sulfonamide group. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to a piperidine ring, which is further substituted with a phenyl group.</p>	58-60
309	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 309: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at position 3 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (indicated with a dashed bond), and at position 4 with a sulfonamide group. The sulfonamide group consists of a sulfonyl group (SO<sub>2</sub>) attached to a piperidine ring, which is further substituted with an acetate group (CH<sub>3</sub>COO-).</p>	77.9-78.9

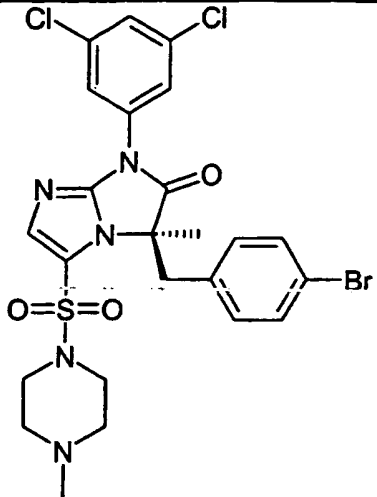
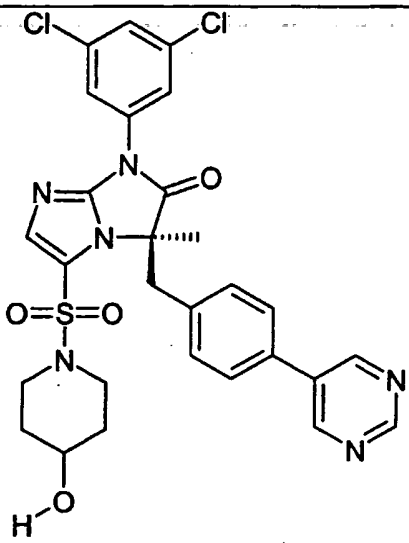
310	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 310: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at position 1, a 4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl group at position 3, and a 4-methylpiperidin-1-ylsulfonyl group at position 4. The triazole ring has a carbonyl group at position 5 and a chiral center at position 4 (indicated by a dashed bond to the 4-methylpiperidin-1-ylsulfonyl group and a solid bond to the 4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl group).</p>	not determined
311	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 311: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at position 1, a 4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl group at position 3, and a 4-(acetylpiperidin-1-yl)sulfonyl group at position 4. The triazole ring has a carbonyl group at position 5 and a chiral center at position 4 (indicated by a dashed bond to the 4-(acetylpiperidin-1-yl)sulfonyl group and a solid bond to the 4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl group).</p>	resin

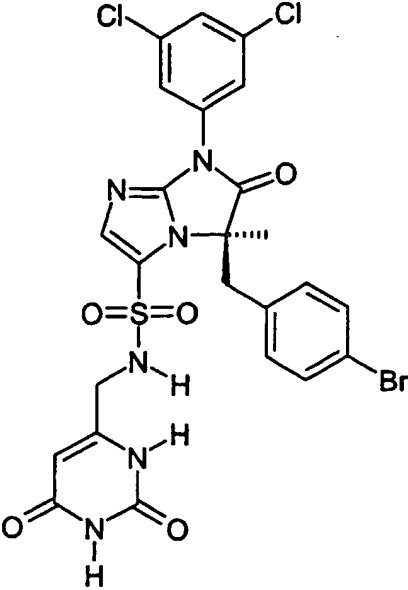
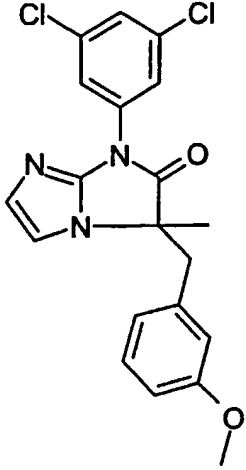
312		resin
313		not determined
314		resin

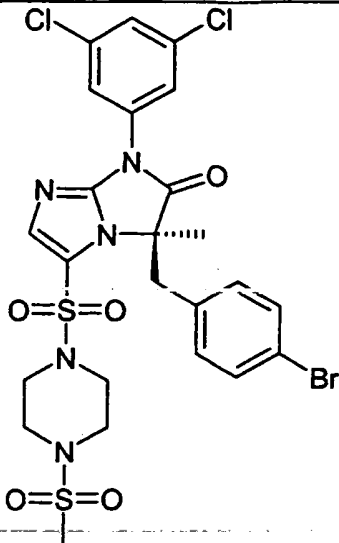
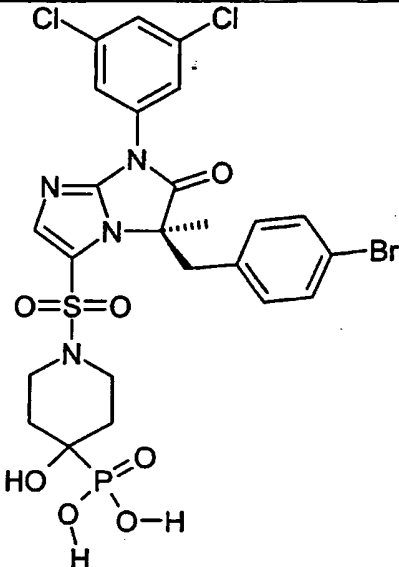
315		not determined
316		resin
317		film

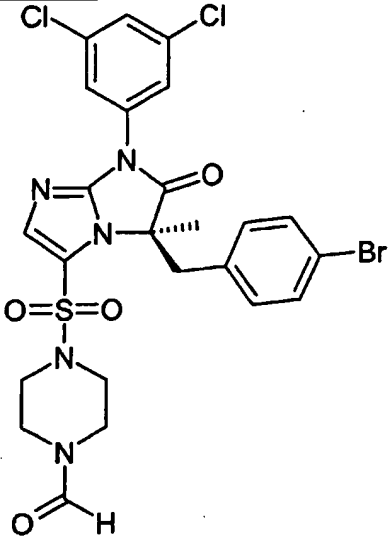
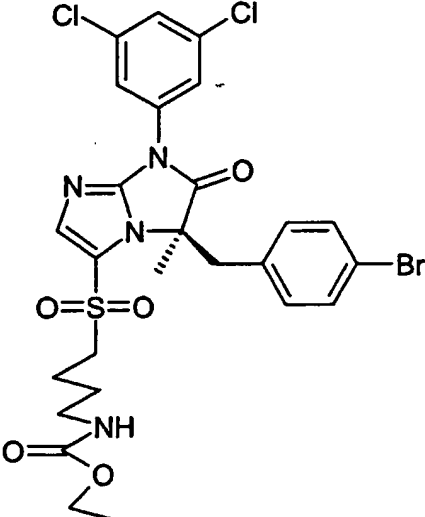
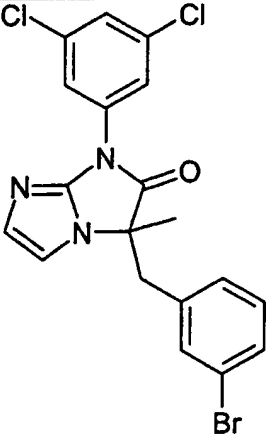


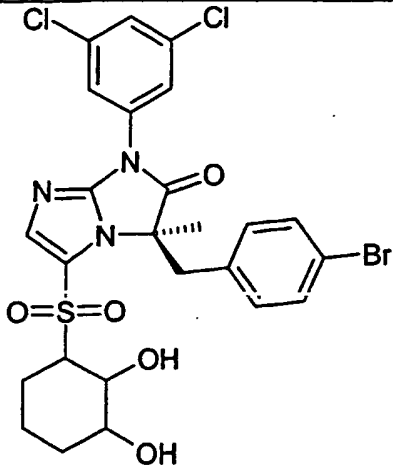
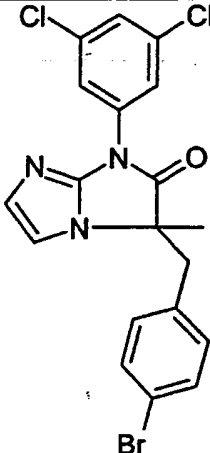
318		resin
319		74.1-76.0
320		not determined

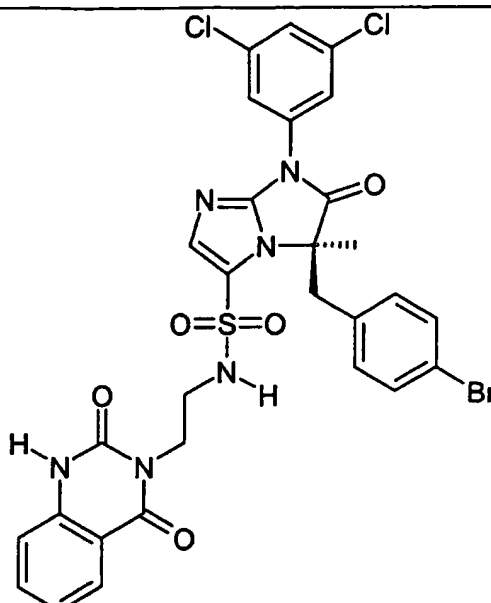
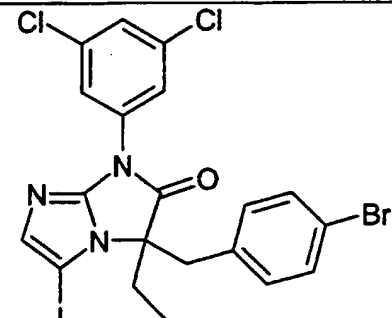
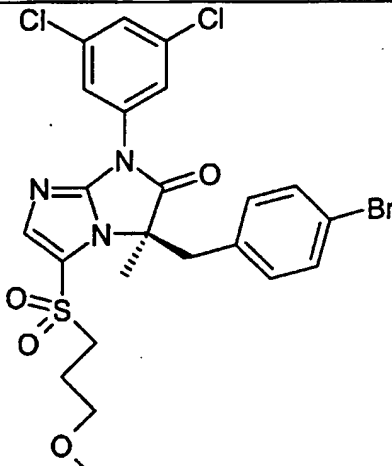
321	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 321: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 3 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, at position 4 with a 4-bromophenyl group, and at position 5 with a 4-(dimethylamino)phenyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 1 with a 4-chlorophenyl group.</p>	foam
322	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 322: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at position 3 with a 4-chlorophenyl group, at position 4 with a 4-(pyridin-2-yl)phenyl group, and at position 5 with a 4-(hydroxymethyl)phenyl group. The triazole ring is also substituted at position 1 with a 4-chlorophenyl group.</p>	foam

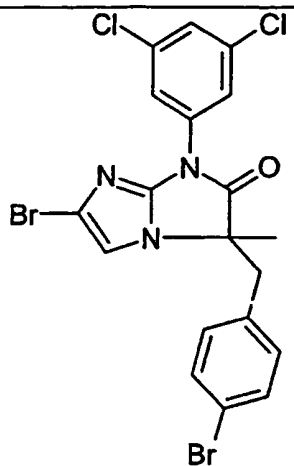
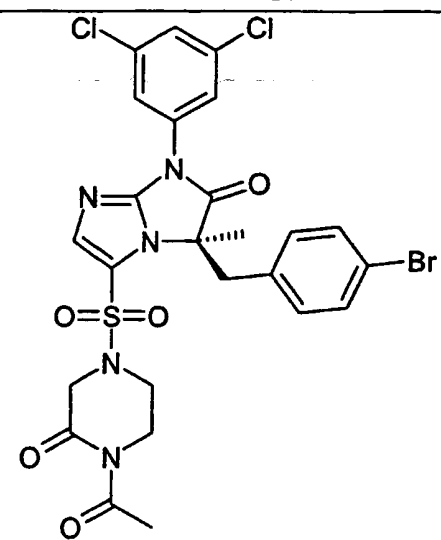
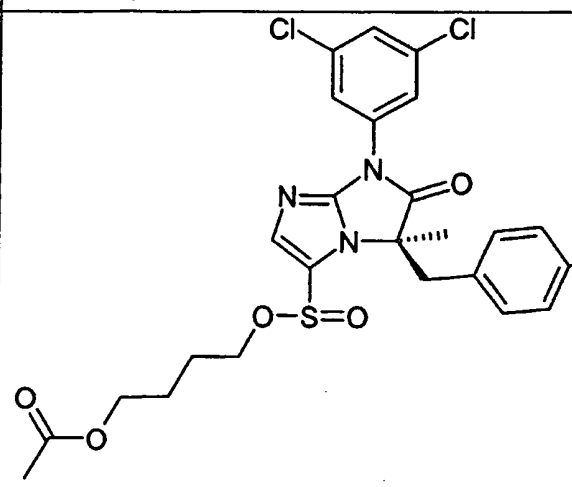
323	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 323: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (indicated with a dashed bond), and a 4-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidin-2-ylmethyl group at C5. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C4.</p>	foam
324	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 324: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a methyl group at C2, and a 4-methoxybenzyl group at C3. The triazole ring also has a carbonyl group at C4.</p>	101.3-102.1

325		196-197
326		not determined

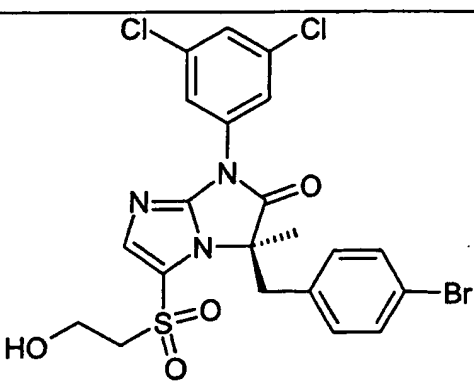
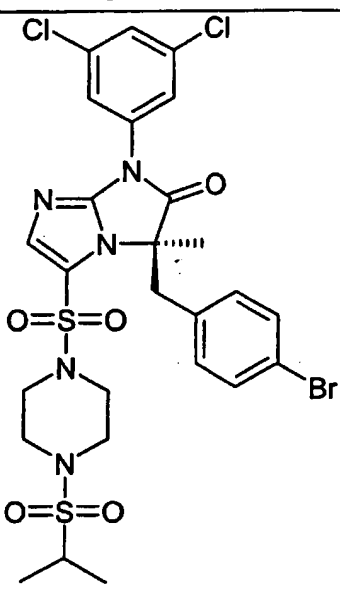
327		foam
328		not determined
329		132.3-133.7

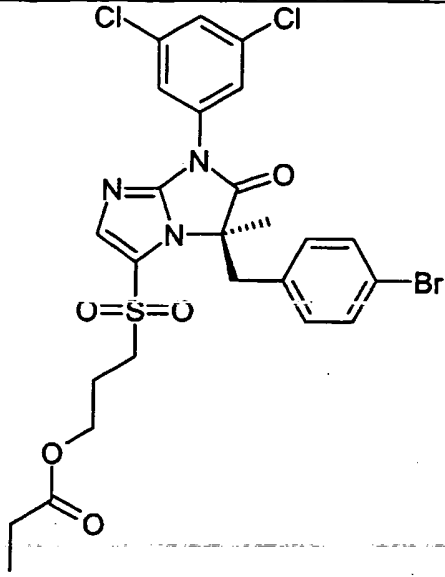
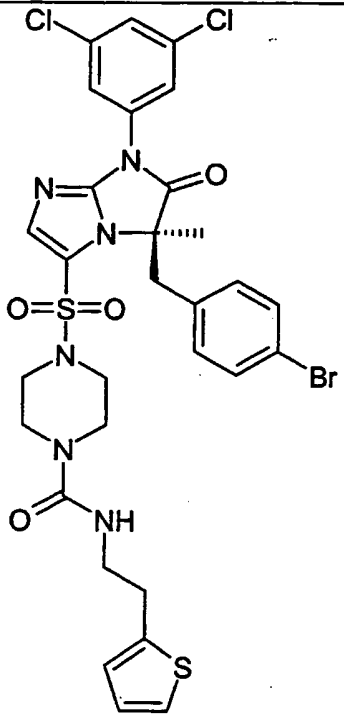
330	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N2C(=O)N(C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)C(S(=O)(=O)C4CCCC(O)C4)c5cncc52)c1</chem>	not determined
331	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N2C(=O)N(C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)C(C)c4cncc42)c1</chem>	oil

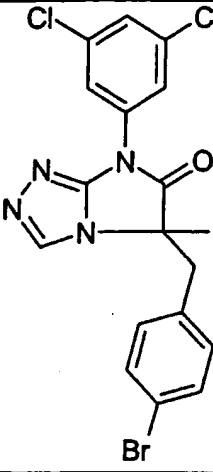
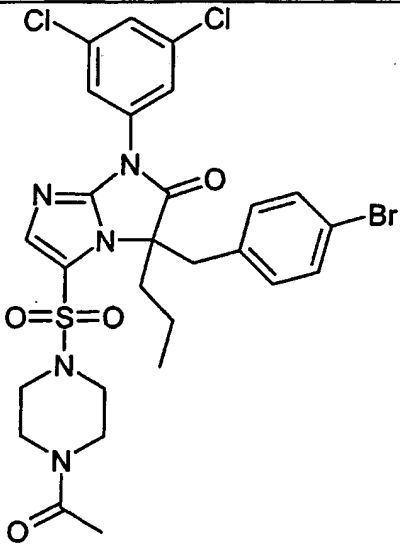
332		82.3-85.4
333		resin
334		resin

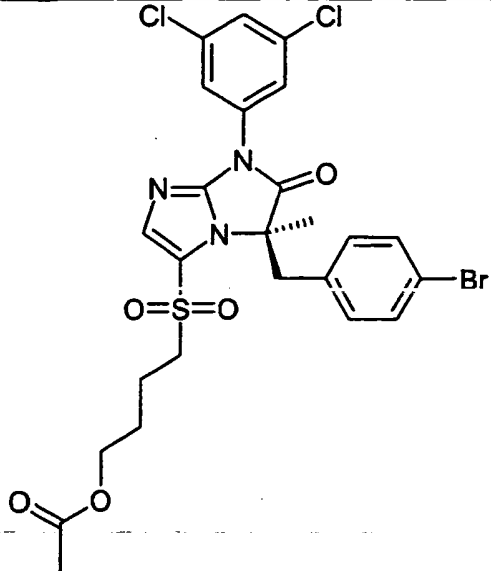
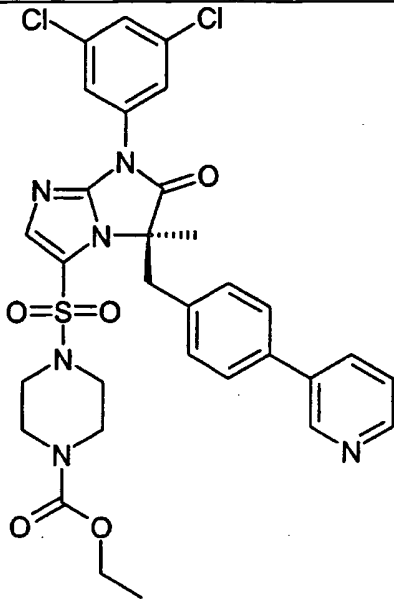
335		not determined
336		film
337		resin

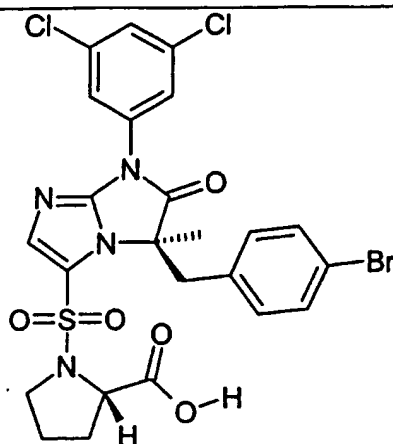
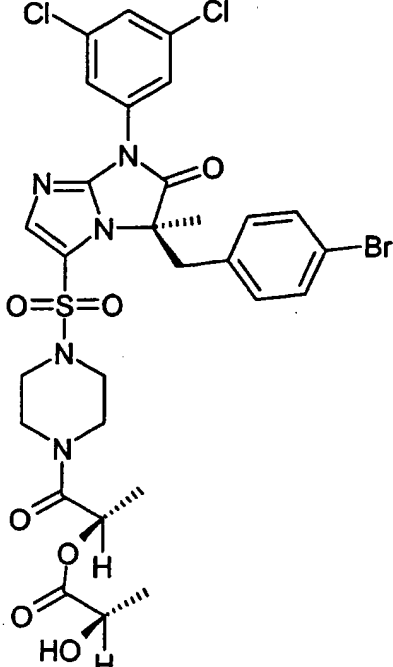


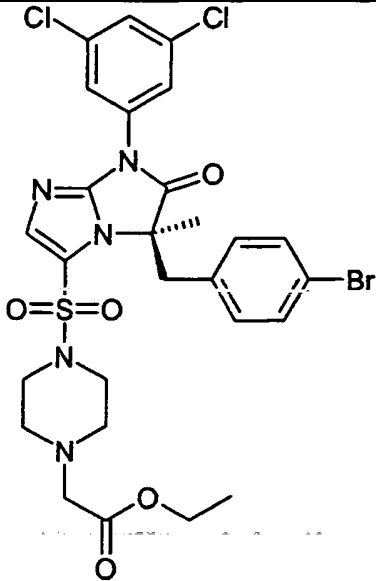
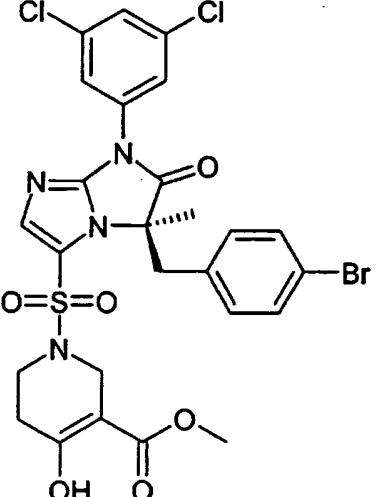
338	 <chem>Clc1cc(Cl)cc(N2C(=O)N(C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)S(=O)(=O)CCO)c1</chem>	139.2-140.0
339	 <chem>CC(C)S(=O)(=O)N1CCN(CC1)S(=O)(=O)N2C(=O)N(C2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)S(=O)(=O)c4cc(Cl)cc(Cl)c4</chem>	126-127

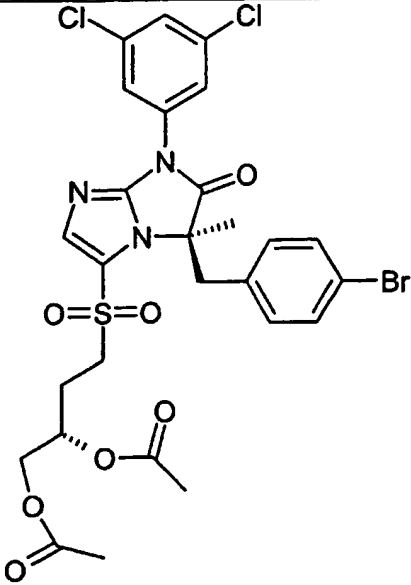
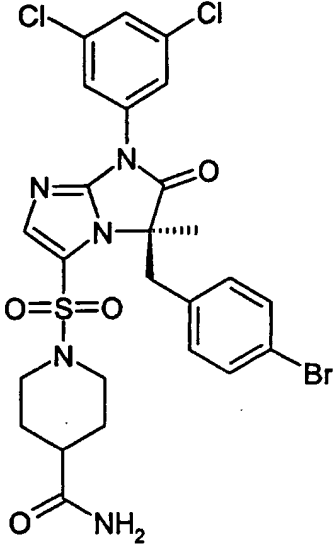
340	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 340: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonyl group, which is further substituted with a 4-ethoxybutyl group.</p>	foam
341	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 341: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonyl group, which is further substituted with a piperidine ring. The piperidine ring is further substituted with a 2-(2-thienylethyl)carbamoyl group.</p>	resin

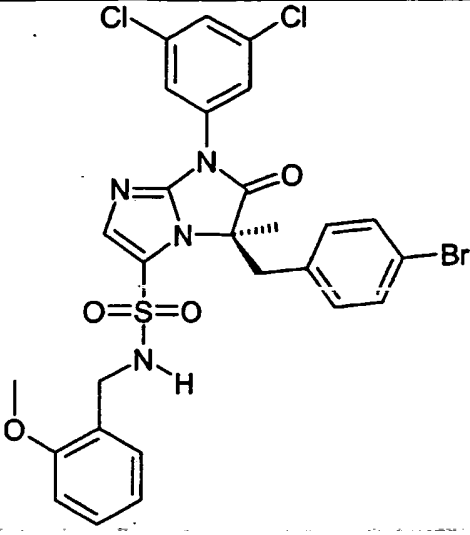
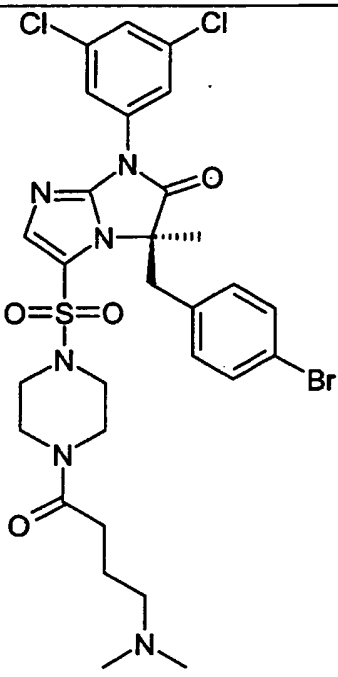
342		not determined
343		resin

344	 <chem>CC(=O)OCCCCS(=O)(=O)c1cc(C#Nn2c(Cl)cc(Cl)cc2)c(Cn2C(=O)N2Cc3ccc(Br)cc3)c1</chem>	foam
345	 <chem>CCOC(=O)N1CCN(S(=O)(=O)c2cc(C#Nn3c(Cl)cc(Cl)cc3)c(Cn3C(=O)N3Cc4ccc(cc4-c5ccncc5)cc4)cc2)CC1</chem>	88-90

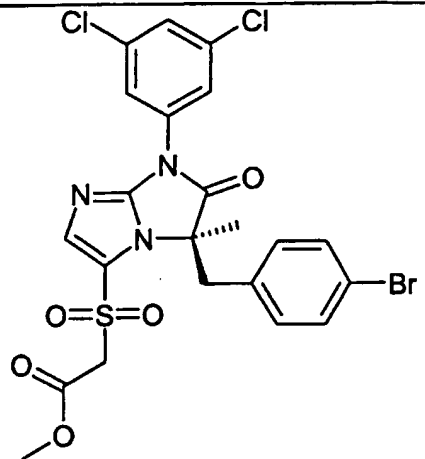
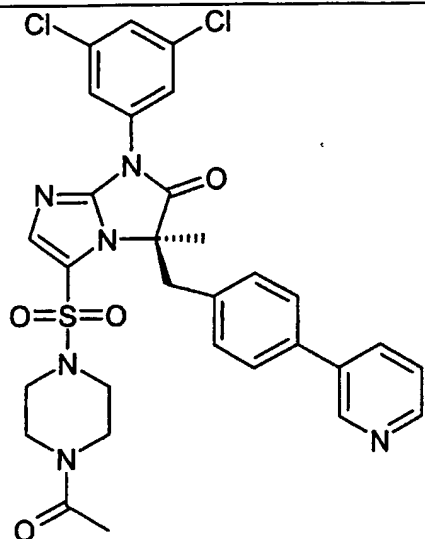
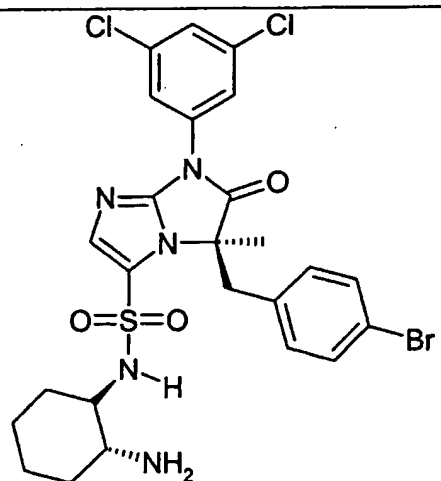
346	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 346: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2, and a 1-methyl-1H-pyrazol-4-ylmethyl group at C5. The pyrazole ring is further substituted with a carboxylic acid group at C3.</p>	not determined
347	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 347: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2, and a 1-methyl-1H-pyrazol-4-ylmethyl group at C5. The pyrazole ring is further substituted with a carboxylic acid group at C3.</p>	not determined

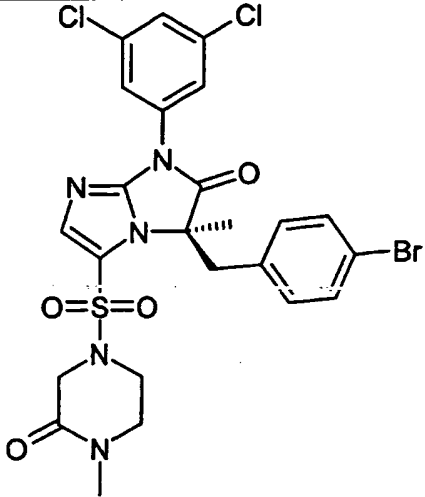
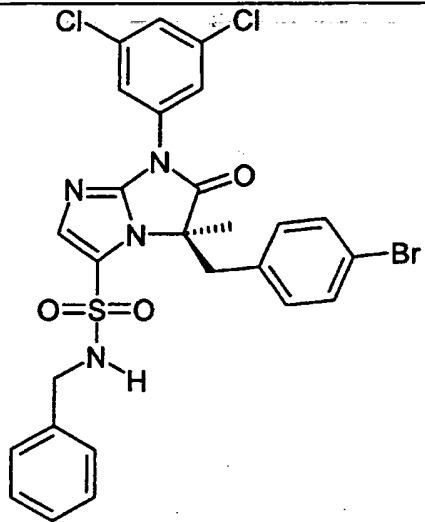
348	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 348: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (wedge bond), and a 4-ethoxybenzenesulfonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is fused to a piperidine ring at C5.</p>	72-78
349	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 349: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-bromophenylmethyl group at C2 (wedge bond), and a 4-methoxybenzenesulfonyl group at C4. The triazole ring is fused to a piperidine ring at C5. The piperidine ring has a hydroxyl group at C6 and a methoxycarbonyl group at C3.</p>	90-95

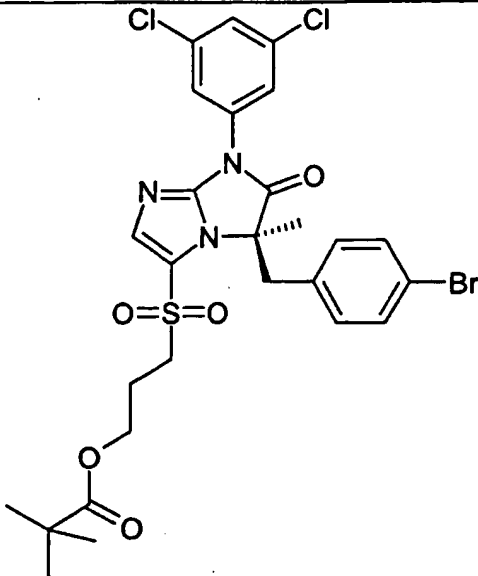
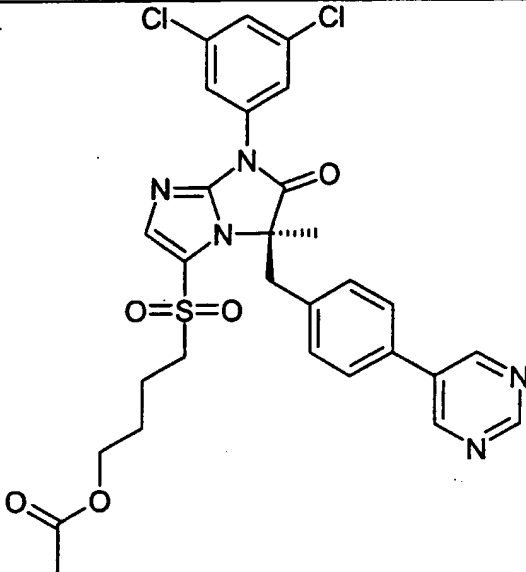
350		foam
351		115.4-117.1

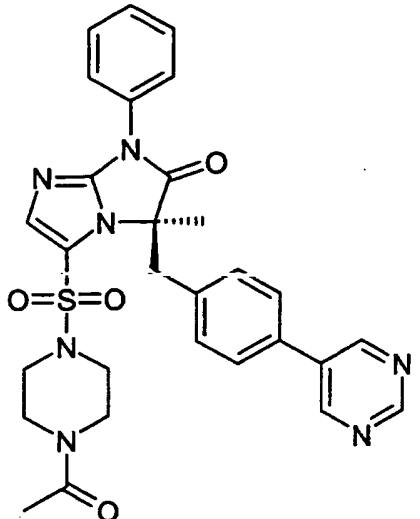
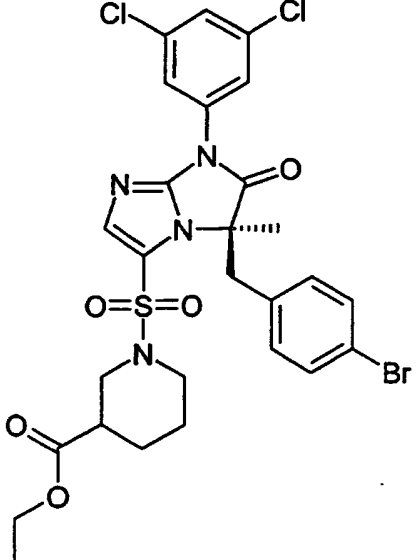
352	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 352: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, which is further substituted with a 3-methoxyphenyl group.</p>	not determined
353	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 353: A 1,2,4-triazole ring system. The 1-position is substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group. The 2-position is substituted with a 4-bromophenyl group. The 4-position is substituted with a sulfonamide group, which is further substituted with a piperazine ring. The piperazine ring is further substituted with a 4-(dimethylamino)butanoyl group.</p>	90-92.5

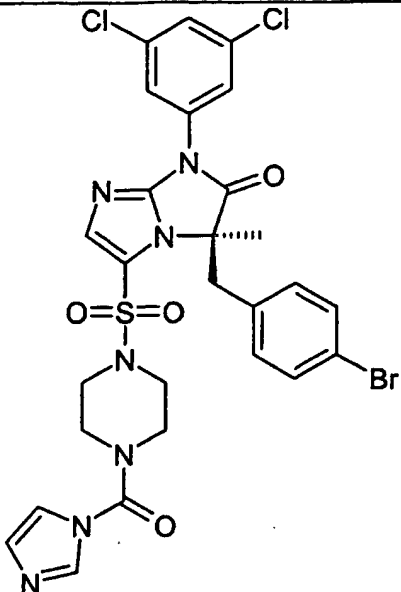
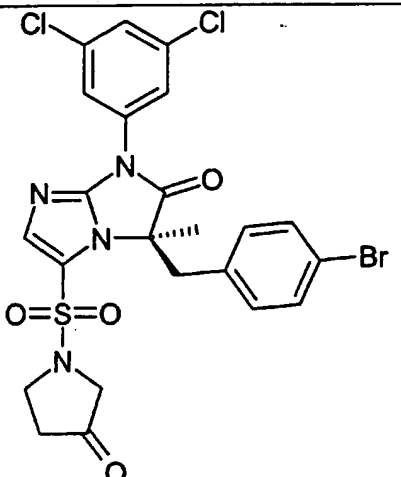


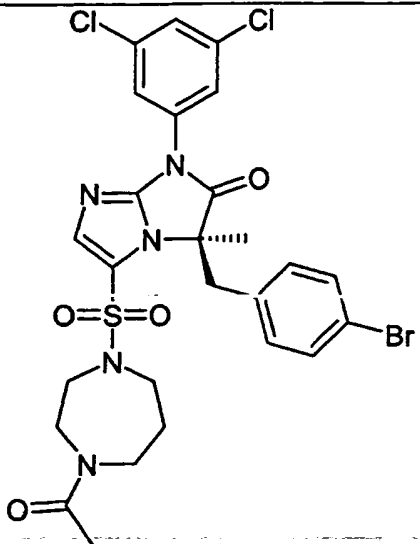
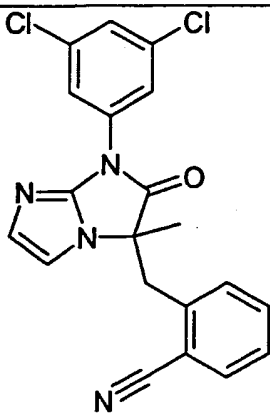
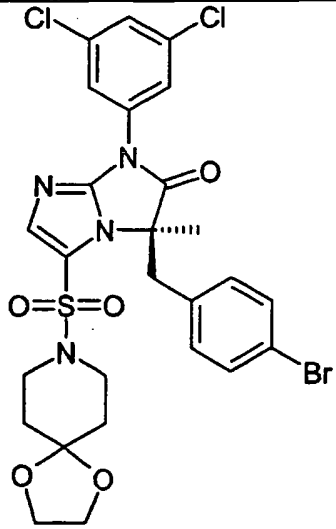
354		oil
355		92-97
356		foam

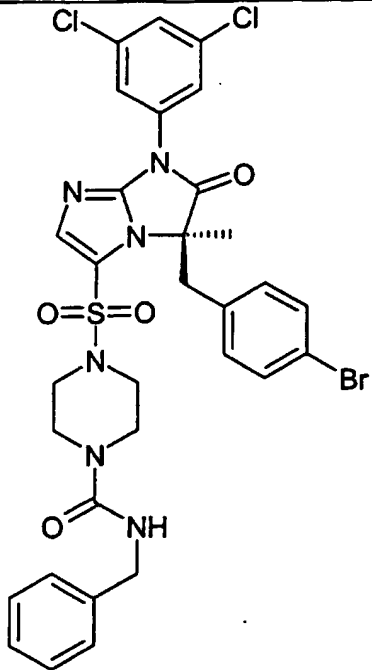
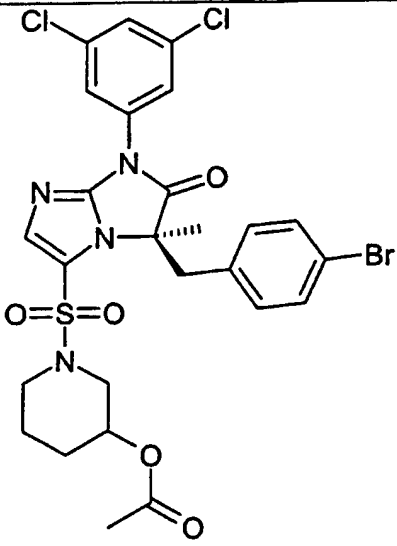
357		film
358		not determined

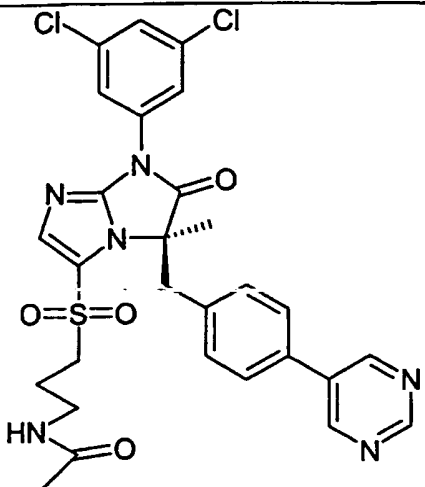
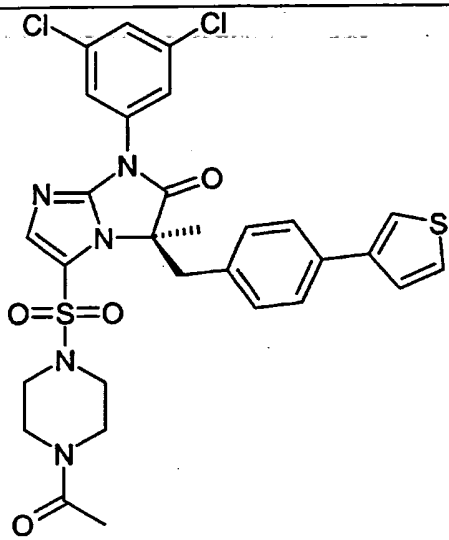
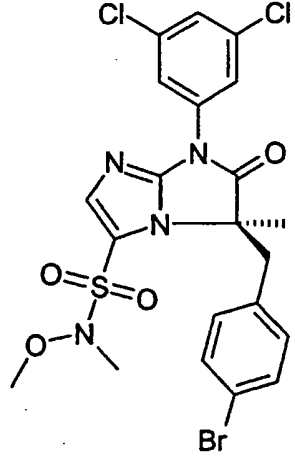
359		foam
360		foam

361	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 361: A 1-phenyl-2-((4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl)methyl)-4-(methylpiperidin-1-yl)-1H-imidazole-5-sulfonamide. The structure features a central imidazole ring with a phenyl group at position 1, a methylpiperidin-1-yl sulfonamide group at position 4, and a (4-(pyrimidin-2-yl)phenyl)methyl group at position 2. Stereochemistry is indicated with a dashed bond to the piperidine group and a solid wedge to the phenyl group.</p>	foam
362	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 362: A 1-(3,5-dichlorophenyl)-2-((4-bromophenyl)methyl)-4-(diethylcarbamoylpiperidin-1-yl)-1H-imidazole-5-sulfonamide. The structure features a central imidazole ring with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at position 1, a diethylcarbamoylpiperidin-1-yl sulfonamide group at position 4, and a (4-bromophenyl)methyl group at position 2. Stereochemistry is indicated with a dashed bond to the piperidine group and a solid wedge to the phenyl group.</p>	not determined

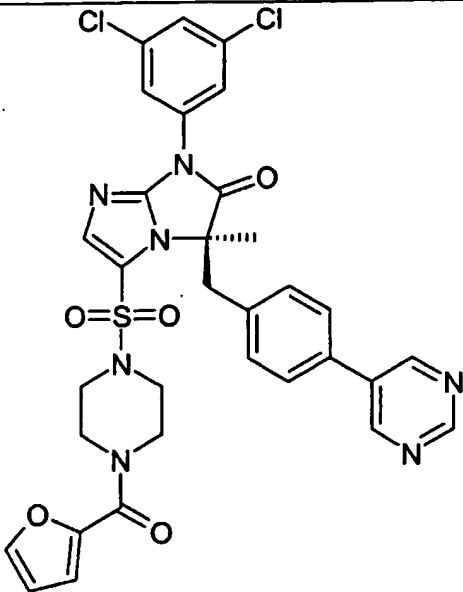
363	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 363: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at N1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at N2 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (wedge bond), and at N3 with a sulfonyl group. The sulfonyl group is connected to a piperidine ring, which is further connected to a pyrazole ring via a carbonyl group.</p>	101-105
364	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 364: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted at N1 with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group, at N2 with a 4-bromophenylmethyl group (dash bond), and at N3 with a sulfonyl group. The sulfonyl group is connected to a pyrrolidine ring via a carbonyl group.</p>	foam

365		resin
366		114.9-116.3
367		foam

368	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 368: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-benzyl group at C2, and a 4-bromobenzyl group at C5. The C2 position is also substituted with a piperidine ring via a sulfonamide linkage (-SO<sub>2</sub>-N-), which is further substituted with a benzylcarbamoyl group (-NH-CO-CH<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>).</p>	88-92
369	 <p>Chemical structure of compound 369: A 1,2,4-triazole ring substituted with a 3,5-dichlorophenyl group at N1, a 4-benzyl group at C2, and a 4-bromobenzyl group at C5. The C2 position is also substituted with a piperidine ring via a sulfonamide linkage (-SO<sub>2</sub>-N-), which is further substituted with an acetoxy group (-O-CO-CH<sub>3</sub>).</p>	not determined

370		not determined
371		not determined
372		125-126



373		109-114
-----	--	---------

### Description of Biological Properties

The biological properties of representative compounds of the formula I were investigated  
5 by way of the experimental protocol described below.

### **Assay to Determine Inhibition of LFA-1 Binding to ICAM-1**

#### Purpose of Assay:

10 This assay protocol is designed to study the direct antagonism, by a test compound, of the interaction of the CAM, ICAM-1 with the Leukointegrin CD18/CD11a (LFA-1).

#### Description of Assay Protocol:

LFA-1 is immunopurified using the TS2/4 antibody from a 20 g pellet of human JY or  
15 SKW3 cells, utilizing a protocol previously described (Dustin, M. J.; *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* **1992**, *148*, 2654-2660). The LFA-1 is purified from SKW3 lysates by immunoaffinity chromatography on TS2/4 LFA-1 mAb Sepharose and eluted at pH 11.5 in the presence of 2 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and 1% octylglucoside. After collection and neutralization of fractions from the TS2/4 column, samples are pooled and precleared with Protein G agarose.

20

A soluble form of ICAM-1 is constructed, expressed, purified and characterized as previously described (Marlin, S.; *et al.*, *Nature*, **1990**, *344*, 70-72 and see Arruda, A.; *et al.*, *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* **1992**, *36*, 1186-1192). Briefly, isoleucine 454 which is located at the putative boundary between domain 5 of the ectodomain and the  
25 transmembrane domain, is changed to a stop codon using standard oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis. This construction yields a molecule identical with the first 453 amino acids of membrane bound ICAM-1. An expression vector is created with a hamster dihydrofolate reductase gene, a neomycin-resistance marker, and the coding region of the sICAM-1 construct described above, along with the promoter, splice signals, and  
30 polyadenylation signal of the SV40 early region. The recombinant plasmid is transfected into CHO DUX cells using standard calcium phosphate methods. Cells are passaged in

selective media (G418) and colonies secreting sICAM-1 are amplified using methotrexate. sICAM-1 is purified from serum-free media using traditional non-affinity chromatographic techniques, including ion exchange and size exclusion chromatography.

- 5 LFA-1 binding to ICAM-1 is monitored by first incubating sICAM-1 at 40 µg/mL in Dulbecco's phosphate buffered saline with calcium and magnesium, additional 2 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and 0.1 mM PMSF (Diluting Buffer) in a 96-well plate for 30 min at room temperature. Plates are then blocked by the addition of 2% (w/v) bovine serum albumin in Diluting Buffer for 37 °C for 1 h. Blocking solution is removed from wells, and test  
10 compounds are diluted and then added followed by the addition of approximately 25 ng of immunoaffinity purified LFA-1. The LFA-1 is incubated in the presence of test compound and ICAM-1 at 37 °C for 1 h. Wells are washed 3 times with Diluting Buffer. The bound LFA-1 is detected by the addition of a polyclonal antibody directed against a peptide corresponding to the CD18 cytoplasmic tail in a 1:100 dilution with Diluting Buffer and  
15 1% BSA and allowed to incubate for 45 min at 37 °C. Wells are washed 3 times with Diluting Buffer and the bound polyclonal antibody is detected by the addition of a 1:4000 dilution of horse radish peroxidase conjugated to goat immunoglobulin directed against rabbit immunoglobulin. This reagent is allowed to incubate for 20 min at 37 °C, wells are washed as above and the substrate for the horse radish peroxidase is added to each well to  
20 develop a quantitative colorimetric signal proportional to the amount of LFA-1 bound to sICAM-1. Soluble ICAM-1 (60 µg/mL) is used as a positive control for inhibition of the LFA-1/ICAM-1 interaction. The lack of the addition of LFA-1 to the binding assay is used as a background control for all samples. A dose-response curve is obtained for all test compounds.

25

All compounds made in the above examples were tested in this assay and each found to have a  $K_d < 10 \mu\text{M}$ .

Description of Therapeutic Use

The novel small molecules of formula I provided by the invention inhibit the ICAM-1/LFA-1 dependent homotypic aggregation of human lymphocytes and human lymphocyte adherence to ICAM-1. These compounds have therapeutic utility in the modulation of immune cell activation/proliferation, *e.g.*, as competitive inhibitors of intercellular ligand/receptor binding reactions involving CAMs and Leukointegrins. To be more specific, the compounds of the invention may be used to treat certain inflammatory conditions, including conditions resulting from a response of the non-specific immune system in a mammal (*e.g.*, adult respiratory distress syndrome, shock, oxygen toxicity, multiple organ injury syndrome secondary to septicemia, multiple organ injury syndrome secondary to trauma, reperfusion injury of tissue due to cardiopulmonary bypass, myocardial infarction or use with thrombolysis agents, acute glomerulonephritis, vasculitis, reactive arthritis, dermatosis with acute inflammatory components, stroke, thermal injury, hemodialysis, leukapheresis, ulcerative colitis, necrotizing enterocolitis and granulocyte transfusion associated syndrome) and conditions resulting from a response of the specific immune system in a mammal (*e.g.*, psoriasis, organ/tissue transplant rejection, graft vs. host reactions and autoimmune diseases including Raynaud's syndrome, autoimmune thyroiditis, dermatitis, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, uveitis, inflammatory bowel disease including Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, and systemic lupus erythematosus). The compounds of the invention may also be used in treating asthma or as an adjunct to minimize toxicity with cytokine therapy in the treatment of cancers. In general these compounds may be employed in the treatment of those diseases currently treatable through steroid therapy.

Thus, another aspect of the invention is the provision of a method for the treatment or prophylaxis of the above-described conditions through the administration of therapeutic or prophylactic amounts of one or more compounds of the formula I.

In accordance with the method provided by the invention, the novel compounds of formula I may be administered for either a prophylactic or therapeutic purpose either alone or with other immunosuppressive or antiinflammatory agents. When provided prophylactically,

the immunosuppressive compound(s) are provided in advance of any inflammatory response or symptom (for example, prior to, at, or shortly after the time of an organ or tissue transplant but in advance of any symptoms of organ rejection). The prophylactic administration of a compound of the formula I serves to prevent or attenuate any  
5 subsequent inflammatory response (such as, for example, rejection of a transplanted organ or tissue, etc.). The therapeutic administration of a compound of the formula I serves to attenuate any actual inflammation (such as, for example, the rejection of a transplanted organ or tissue). Thus, in accordance with the invention, a compound of the formula I can be administered either prior to the onset of inflammation (so as to suppress an anticipated  
10 inflammation) or after the initiation of inflammation.

The novel compounds of the formula I may, in accordance with the invention, be administered in single or divided doses by the oral, parenteral or topical routes. A suitable oral dosage for a compound of formula I would be in the range of about 0.1 mg to 10 g per  
15 day. In parenteral formulations, a suitable dosage unit may contain from 0.1 to 250 mg of said compounds, whereas for topical administration, formulations containing 0.01 to 1% active ingredient are preferred. It should be understood, however, that the dosage administration from patient to patient will vary and the dosage for any particular patient will depend upon the clinician's judgement, who will use as criteria for fixing a proper  
20 dosage the size and condition of the patient as well as the patient's response to the drug.

When the compounds of the present invention are to be administered by the oral route, they may be administered as medicaments in the form of pharmaceutical preparations which contain them in association with a compatible pharmaceutical carrier material. Such  
25 carrier material can be an inert organic or inorganic carrier material suitable for oral administration. Examples of such carrier materials are water, gelatin, talc, starch, magnesium stearate, gum arabic, vegetable oils, polyalkylene-glycols, petroleum jelly and the like.

30 The pharmaceutical preparations can be prepared in a conventional manner and finished dosage forms can be solid dosage forms, for example, tablets, dragees, capsules, and the

like, or liquid dosage forms, for example solutions, suspensions, emulsions and the like. The pharmaceutical preparations may be subjected to conventional pharmaceutical operations such as sterilization. Further, the pharmaceutical preparations may contain conventional adjuvants such as preservatives, stabilizers, emulsifiers, flavor-improvers, wetting agents, buffers, salts for varying the osmotic pressure and the like. Solid carrier  
5 material which can be used include, for example, starch, lactose, mannitol, methyl cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose, talc, silica, dibasic calcium phosphate, and high molecular weight polymers (such as polyethylene glycol).

10 For parenteral use, a compound of formula I can be administered in an aqueous or non-aqueous solution, suspension or emulsion in a pharmaceutically acceptable oil or a mixture of liquids, which may contain bacteriostatic agents, antioxidants, preservatives, buffers or other solutes to render the solution isotonic with the blood, thickening agents, suspending agents or other pharmaceutically acceptable additives. Additives of this type include, for  
15 example, tartrate, citrate and acetate buffers, ethanol, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, complex formers (such as EDTA), antioxidants (such as sodium bisulfite, sodium metabisulfite, and ascorbic acid), high molecular weight polymers (such as liquid polyethylene oxides) for viscosity regulation and polyethylene derivatives of sorbitol anhydrides. Preservatives may also be added if necessary, such as benzoic acid, methyl or  
20 propyl paraben, benzalkonium chloride and other quaternary ammonium compounds.

The compounds of this invention may also be administered as solutions for nasal application and may contain in addition to the compounds of this invention suitable buffers, tonicity adjusters, microbial preservatives, antioxidants and viscosity-increasing  
25 agents in an aqueous vehicle. Examples of agents used to increase viscosity are polyvinyl alcohol, cellulose derivatives, polyvinylpyrrolidone, polysorbates or glycerin. Microbial preservatives added may include benzalkonium chloride, thimerosal, chloro-butanol or phenylethyl alcohol.

30 Additionally, the compounds provided by the invention can be administered topically or by suppository.

## Formulations

Compounds of the formula I can be formulated for therapeutic administration in a number  
 5 of ways. Descriptions of several exemplary formulations are given below.

### Example A

#### Capsules or Tablets

Example A-1		Example A-2	
Ingredients	Quantity	Ingredients	Quantity
Compound of formula I	250 mg	Compound of formula I	50 mg
Starch	160 mg	Dicalcium Phosphate	160 mg
Microcrys. Cellulose	90 mg	Microcrys. Cellulose	90 mg
Sodium Starch Glycolate	10 mg	Stearic acid	5 mg
Magnesium Stearate	2 mg	Sodium Starch Glycolate	10 mg
Fumed colloidal silica	1 mg	Fumed colloidal silica	1 mg

10

The compound of formula I is blended into a powder mixture with the premixed excipient materials as identified above with the exception of the lubricant. The lubricant is then blended in and the resulting blend compressed into tablets or filled into hard gelatin capsules.

15

Example B

## Parenteral Solutions

Ingredients	Quantity
Compound of formula I	500 mg
PEG 400	40% by volume
Ethyl Alcohol	5% by volume
Saline	55% by volume

- 5 The excipient materials are mixed and then added to one of the compounds of formula I in such volume as is necessary for dissolution. Mixing is continued until the solution is clear. The solution then filtered into the appropriate vials or ampoules and sterilized by autoclaving.

10

Example C

## Suspension

Ingredients	Quantity
Compound of formula I	100 mg
Citric acid	1.92g
Benzalkonium chloride	0.025% by weight
EDTA	0.1 % by weight
Polyvinylalcohol	10% by weight
Water	q.s. to 100mL

- 15 The excipient materials are mixed with the water and thereafter one of the compounds of formula I is added and mixing is continued until the suspension is homogeneous. The suspension is then transferred into the appropriate vials or ampoules.



Example D

## Topical Formulation

Ingredients	Quantity
Compound of formula I	5% by weight
Tefose 63	13% by weight
Labrafil M 1944 CS	3% by weight
Paraffin Oil	8% by weight
Methylparaben (MP)	0.15% by weight
Propylparaben (PP)	0.05% by weight
Deionized water	q.s. to 100

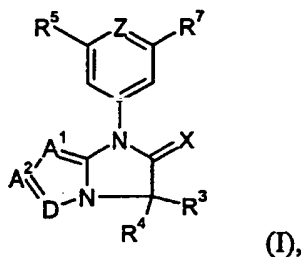
5

The proper amounts of Tefose 63, Labrafil M 1944 CS, Paraffin oil and water are mixed and heated at 75 °C until all components have melted. The mixture is then cooled to 50 °C with continuous stirring. Methylparaben and propylparaben are added with mixing and the mixture is cooled to ambient temperature. The compound of formula I is added to the

10 mixture and blended well.

What is claimed is:

1. A compound of the formula I



5

wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N- or =C(H)-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =N-, =C(H)-, or =C(R')- wherein R' is halogen, -CN, -Oalkyl, -CO<sub>2</sub>alkyl or  
 10 -SO<sub>2</sub>alkyl, wherein the foregoing alkyl moieties are of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

D is =N-, =C(R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(H)-, =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(S(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(C(O)H)-,  
 =C(SR<sup>1a</sup>)-, =C(OR<sup>1a</sup>)- or =C(NHR<sup>1a</sup>)-,

wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100</sup>, which is:

15 branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon  
 atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl,  
 alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are  
 optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) halogen,

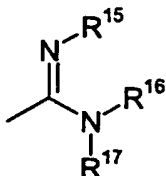
20 (ii) oxo,

(iii) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl,  
 naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl,  
 oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl,  
 oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl,  
 25 indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl,

benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

- 5 (a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,  
(b) -COOH,  
(c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,  
(d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,  
(e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or  
10 branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,  
(f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  
15 wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,  
(g) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>11</sup>R<sup>12</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup>  
20 constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-,  
25 -NH-, or -NMe-,  
(h) a group of the formula -OR<sup>13</sup>, wherein R<sup>13</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,  
(i) a group of the formula -SR<sup>14</sup>, wherein R<sup>14</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,  
30 (j) -CN, or

(k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(l) halogen,

(m) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCONHalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(n) a group of the formula  $-\text{NHCOOalkyl}$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(iv) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(v)  $-\text{CN}$ ,

(vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  $\text{SO}_2-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,

(vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{21}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of

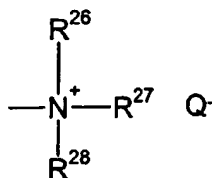
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
 -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(viii) a group of the formula -SR<sup>22</sup>, wherein R<sup>22</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
 alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more  
 5 hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a  
 group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and  
 -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(ix) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each,  
 10 independently,

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or  
 cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more  
 hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced  
 15 with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
 -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
 -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>COOH, wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,
- (d) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
 20 wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or
- (e) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CONHR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
 and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
 atoms,

(x) a quaternary group of the formula



25

wherein R<sup>26</sup>, R<sup>27</sup> and R<sup>28</sup> are each, independently, a branched or

unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $Q^-$  is a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion,

(xi) a saturated, or partially unsaturated heterocyclic group consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with oxo, and

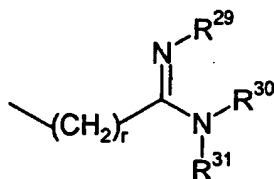
(xii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

(B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,

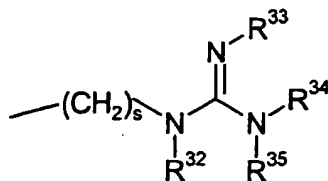
(D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,

(E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein  $r$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein  $s$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein

two of R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (G) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, phtalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (ii) -COOH,
  - (iii) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
  - (iv) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
  - (v) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>36</sup>, wherein R<sup>36</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
  - (vi) a group of the formula -NR<sup>37</sup>R<sup>38</sup>, wherein R<sup>37</sup> and R<sup>38</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>37</sup> and R<sup>38</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
  - (vii) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>39</sup>R<sup>40</sup>, wherein R<sup>39</sup> and R<sup>40</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>39</sup> and R<sup>40</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein

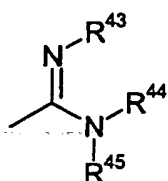
one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(viii) a group of the formula -OR<sup>41</sup>, wherein R<sup>41</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

5 (ix) a group of the formula -SR<sup>42</sup>, wherein R<sup>42</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms.

(x) -CN, or

(xi) an amidino group of the formula



10 wherein R<sup>43</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> and R<sup>45</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or  
alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>43</sup>, R<sup>44</sup> and R<sup>45</sup> may  
additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon  
atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a  
heterocyclic ring,

15 (H) groups of the formula -NR<sup>46</sup>R<sup>47</sup>, wherein R<sup>46</sup> and R<sup>47</sup> are each  
independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono-or  
polysubstituted with halogen, or R<sup>100</sup>, wherein R<sup>100</sup> is as hereinbefore  
defined,

20 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms  
selected from N, O, C and S, or bicyclic heterocyclic groups consisting of 8 to  
11 atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to  
imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl,  
morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl,  
tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein  
25 said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties  
selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,



(ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-S-$ ,  $S(O)-$ ,  $SO_2-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or
- (e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

(iii)  $-CONR^{105}R^{106}$ , wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  are each independently:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-OR^{112}$ , wherein  $R^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

or, wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said



hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-,  
-NH-, or -NMe-,

(iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched  
alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,

5 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2  
to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is  
optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class  
consisting of:

- 10 (a) oxo,  
(b) -OH,  
(c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,  
(e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,  
15 (f) -NHMe,  
(g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,  
(h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and  
(i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or  
cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,

20 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic,  
and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally  
replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting  
of:

- (a) -OH,  
25 (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,  
(d) -NHMe,  
(e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,  
(f) -NHCOMe,  
30 (g) oxo,

- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2 \text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinolizinyl, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl,
- (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2 \text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinolizinyl, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

- 5 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- 10 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 15 (viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 20
- 25
- 30 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny,

- piperaziny, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl,  
 tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl,  
 tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is  
 optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or  
 5 branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is  
 hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or  
 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl  
 moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected  
 from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched  
 10 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or  
 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
 (ix) -CHO,  
 (x) the halogen atoms, and  
 (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl,  
 15 naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl,  
 oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl,  
 oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl,  
 indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl,  
 benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, purinyl,  
 20 quinolizinyl, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny,  
 pteridinyl and quinazolinyl,  
 (J) the halogen atoms, and  
 (K) -CN and,  
 wherein R<sup>1a</sup> is R<sup>100</sup>;  
 25 X is an oxygen or sulfur atom;  
 R<sup>3</sup> is:  
 (A) a hydrogen atom, or  
 (B) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5  
 carbon atoms wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted  
 30 with:

- (i) a group of the formula  $-OR^{48}$ , wherein  $R^{48}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- (ii) a group of the formula  $-NR^{49}R^{50}$ , wherein  $R^{49}$  and  $R^{50}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms, or acyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms;

$R^4$  is a group of the formula  $-(CR^{51}R^{52})_x(CR^{53}R^{54})_yR^{55}$ , wherein,

x is 0 or 1,

y is 0 or 1,

$R^{51}$ ,  $R^{52}$  and  $R^{53}$  are each, independently:

- (A) a hydrogen atom,
- (B) a group of the formula  $-OR^{56}$ , wherein  $R^{56}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

$R^{54}$  is:

- (A) a group of the formula  $R^{57}$ , wherein  $R^{57}$  is independently selected from the same class as is  $R^1$ , or
- (B) a group of the formula  $-OR^{58}$ , wherein  $R^{58}$  is independently selected from the same class as is  $R^1$ ;

$R^{55}$  is:

aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

(A) R<sup>59</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizynyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizynyl, cinnolynyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>60</sup>, wherein R<sup>60</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (iii) a group of the formula -NR<sup>61</sup>R<sup>62</sup>, wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>61</sup> and R<sup>62</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (iv) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>63</sup>R<sup>64</sup>, wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>63</sup> and R<sup>64</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (v) a group of the formula -OR<sup>65</sup>, wherein R<sup>65</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,



- (vi) a group of the formula  $-SR^{66}$ , wherein  $R^{66}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (vii)  $-CN$ ,
- (viii) nitro, or
- 5 (ix) halogen,
- (B) methyl, which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with fluorine atoms and additionally is optionally monosubstituted with  $R^{59}$ ,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- 10 (D) a group of the formula  $-COOR^{67}$ , wherein  $R^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-NR^{68}R^{69}$ , wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 15 or wherein  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $R^{68}$  and  $R^{69}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59}$ ,
- 20 (F) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{70}R^{71}$ , wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- 25 and wherein one of  $R^{70}$  and  $R^{71}$  may additionally be the group  $R^{59}$ ,
- (G) a group of the formula  $-COR^{72}$ , wherein  $R^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or  $R^{59}$ ,

(H) a group of the formula  $-OR^{73}$ , wherein  $R^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59}$ ,

(I) a group of the formula  $-SR^{74}$ , wherein  $R^{74}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $R^{59}$ ,

(J)  $-CN$ ,

(K) nitro, or

(L) halogen;

$R^5$  is Cl or trifluoromethyl;

Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(R^6)-$  wherein  $R^6$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl or trifluoromethyl; and,

$R^7$  is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl,  $-CN$ , nitro or trifluoromethyl, with the condition that when Z is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ,  $R^7$  is chlorine, trifluoromethyl,  $-CN$  or nitro;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

$A^1$  is  $=N-$  or  $=C(H)-$ ;

$A^2$  is  $=N-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ , or  $=C(R')-$  wherein  $R'$  is halogen,  $-CN$ ,  $-Oalkyl$ ,  $-CO_2alkyl$  or  $-SO_2alkyl$ , wherein the foregoing alkyl moieties are of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

D is  $=N-$ ,  $=C(R^1)-$ ,  $=C(H)-$ ,  $=C(SO_2R^1)-$ ,  $=C(S(O)R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)R^1)-$ ,  $=C(C(O)H)-$ ,  $=C(SR^{1a})-$ ,  $=C(OR^{1a})-$  or  $=C(NHR^{1a})-$ ,

wherein  $R^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:

(A)  $-R^{100a}$ , which is:

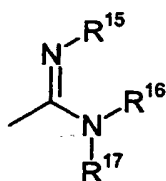
branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) halogen,

- (ii) oxo,
- (iii) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizynyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolynyl, isoquinolynyl, purinyl, quinolizynyl, cinnolynyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:
- (a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (b) -COOH,
- (c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,
- (d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,
- (e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (g) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>11</sup>R<sup>12</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said

hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

- (h) a group of the formula -OR<sup>13</sup>, wherein R<sup>13</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula -SR<sup>14</sup>, wherein R<sup>14</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (j) -CN, or
- (k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup> and R<sup>17</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup> and R<sup>17</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (l) halogen,
- (m) a group of the formula -NHCONHalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (n) a group of the formula -NHCOOalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (iv) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (v) -CN,
- (vi) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein

one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -S-, S(O)-, SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(vii) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a  
straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein  
one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally  
replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(viii) a group of the formula -SR<sup>22</sup>, wherein R<sup>22</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an  
alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a  
group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(ix) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each,  
independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

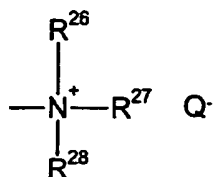
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or  
cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced  
with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(c) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>COOH, wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>COOR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>CONHR<sup>25</sup>, wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
atoms,

- (x) a quaternary group of the formula

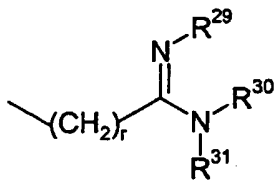


wherein  $\text{R}^{26}$ ,  $\text{R}^{27}$  and  $\text{R}^{28}$  are each, independently, a branched or unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and  $\text{Q}^-$  is a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion,

- (xi) a saturated, or partially unsaturated heterocyclic group consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with oxo, and

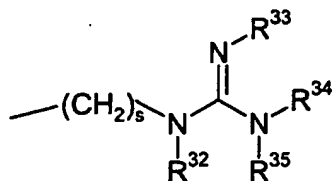
- (xii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein  $r$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{29}$ ,  $\text{R}^{30}$  and  $\text{R}^{31}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein s is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (G) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, phtalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group are optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (ii)  $-\text{COOH}$ ,
  - (iii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,
  - (iv)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,
  - (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{36}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{36}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
  - (vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{37}\text{R}^{38}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms

which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,

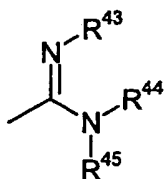
(vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{39}\text{R}^{40}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{S}-$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  $\text{SO}_2-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,

(viii) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{41}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

(ix) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{42}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

(x)  $-\text{CN}$ , or

(xi) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $\text{R}^{43}$ ,  $\text{R}^{44}$  and  $\text{R}^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{43}$ ,  $\text{R}^{44}$  and  $\text{R}^{45}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(H) groups of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{46}\text{R}^{47}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{46}$  and  $\text{R}^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen, or  $\text{R}^{100a}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{100a}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

(I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups consisting of 3 to 7 ring atoms selected from N, O, C and S, or bicyclic heterocyclic groups consisting of 8 to



11 atoms selected from N, O, C and S, including but not limited to imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,

(c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,

(d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-S-$ ,  $S(O)-$ ,  $SO_2-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or

(e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,

(iii)  $-CONR^{105}R^{106}$ , wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  are each independently:

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,

(c) benzoyl,

(d) benzyl or

- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-OR^{112}$ , wherein  $R^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
or, wherein  $R^{105}$  and  $R^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-S-$ ,  $S(O)-$ ,  $SO_2-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ ,
- (iv)  $-COOR^{107}$ , wherein  $R^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
  - (b)  $-OH$ ,
  - (c)  $-OR^{113}$ , wherein  $R^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d)  $-OCOCH_3$ ,
  - (e)  $-NH_2$ ,
  - (f)  $-NHMe$ ,
  - (g)  $-NMe_2$ ,
  - (h)  $-CO_2H$ , and
  - (i)  $-CO_2 R^{114}$  wherein  $R^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a)  $-OH$ ,

- (b)  $-OR^{115}$ , wherein  $R^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (c)  $-NH_2$ ,  
 (d)  $-NHMe$ ,  
 (e)  $-NMe_2$ ,  
 5 (f)  $-NHCOMe$ ,  
 (g) oxo,  
 (h)  $-CO_2 R^{116}$ , wherein  $R^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,  
 (i)  $-CN$ ,  
 (j) the halogen atoms,  
 10 (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, and  
 15 (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolyzinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl,  
 20 indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl,  
 (vii)  $-SO_2R^{108}$ , wherein  $R^{108}$  is:  
 (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of  
 25 phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolyzinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl,  
 30 quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and

- quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolany, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnolinyl, pthalaniny, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridiny, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class

- consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of  
5 imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, wherein said heterocycl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or  
10 branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched  
15 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl,  
20 naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indoliziny, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl,  
25 quinoliziny, cinnolinyl, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazolinyl,
- (J) the halogen atoms, and
- (K) -CN and,
- wherein R<sup>1a</sup> is R<sup>100a</sup>;
- 30 X is an oxygen or sulfur atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is:

- (A) a hydrogen atom, or
- (B) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted with:
  - (i) a group of the formula -OR<sup>48</sup>, wherein R<sup>48</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
  - (ii) a group of the formula -NR<sup>49</sup>R<sup>50</sup>, wherein R<sup>49</sup> and R<sup>50</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms, or acyl of 1 to 2 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

R<sup>55</sup> is:

aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

- (A) R<sup>59a</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizinyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms

of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

- 5
- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{60}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{60}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- 10
- (iii) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{61}\text{R}^{62}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{61}$  and  $\text{R}^{62}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{61}$  and  $\text{R}^{62}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- 15
- (iv) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{63}\text{R}^{64}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{63}$  and  $\text{R}^{64}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{63}$  and  $\text{R}^{64}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a
- 20
- heterocyclic ring,
- (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{65}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{65}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{66}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{66}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 25
- (vii)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (viii) nitro, or
- (ix) halogen,
- (B) methyl, which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with fluorine atoms and additionally is optionally monosubstituted with  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,

- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (D) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{67}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{68}\text{R}^{69}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{68}$  and  $\text{R}^{69}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{68}$  and  $\text{R}^{69}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $\text{R}^{68}$  and  $\text{R}^{69}$  may additionally be the group  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{70}\text{R}^{71}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{70}$  and  $\text{R}^{71}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl or fluoroalkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{70}$  and  $\text{R}^{71}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one of  $\text{R}^{70}$  and  $\text{R}^{71}$  may additionally be the group  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,
- (G) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,
- (H) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,
- (I) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{74}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{74}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $\text{R}^{59a}$ ,
- (J)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (K) nitro, or
- (L) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl or trifluoromethyl;



- Z is =N- or =C(R<sup>6</sup>)- wherein R<sup>6</sup> is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl or trifluoromethyl; and,
- R<sup>7</sup> is a hydrogen, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom, methyl, -CN, nitro or trifluoromethyl, with the condition that when Z is =N- or =C(H)-, R<sup>7</sup> is chlorine, trifluoromethyl, -CN or nitro;
- 5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

3. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N- or =C(H)-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =N-, or =C(H)-;

D is =N-, =C(R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(H)-, =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)-, =C(C(O)H)- or =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is

5 selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100b</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

10

(i) oxo,

(ii) phenyl, wherein one hydrogen atom of said phenyl group is optionally replaced with:

(a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

15

(b) -COOH,

(c) -SO<sub>2</sub>OH,

(d) -PO(OH)<sub>2</sub>,

(e) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>8</sup>, wherein R<sup>8</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

20

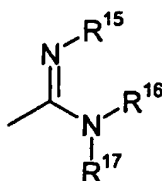
(f) a group of the formula -NR<sup>9</sup>R<sup>10</sup>, wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,

25

(g) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>11</sup>R<sup>12</sup>, wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup>

constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

- 5 (h) a group of the formula  $-OR^{13}$ , wherein  $R^{13}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula  $-SR^{14}$ , wherein  $R^{14}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (j) -CN, or
- 10 (k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of  $R^{15}$ ,  $R^{16}$  and  $R^{17}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- 15 (l) a group of the formula  $-NHCONHalkyl$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (m) a group of the formula  $-NHCOOalkyl$ , wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- 20 (iii) a group of the formula  $-COOR^{18}$ , wherein  $R^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (iv) a group of the formula  $-CONR^{19}R^{20}$ , wherein  $R^{19}$  and  $R^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $R^{19}$  and  $R^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein
- 25

one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(v) a group of the formula  $-OR^{21}$ , wherein  $R^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a  
straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein  
one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally  
replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(vi) a group of the formula  $-NR^{23}R^{24}$ , wherein  $R^{23}$  and  $R^{24}$  are each,  
independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

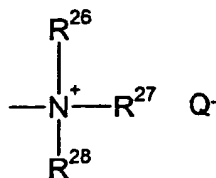
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or  
cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more  
hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced  
with a group independently selected from the class consisting of  
-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,

(d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or

(e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
and wherein  $R^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
atoms,

(vii) a quaternary group of the formula

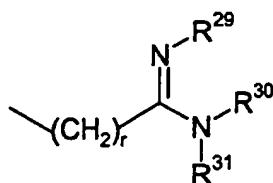


wherein  $R^{26}$ ,  $R^{27}$  and  $R^{28}$  are each, independently, a branched or

unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and Q<sup>-</sup> a pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion, or

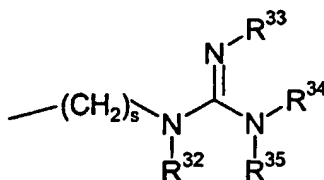
(viii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- 5 (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
 (E) amidino groups of the formula



10 wherein r is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- (F) guanidino groups of the formula

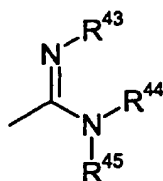


15 wherein s is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>32</sup>, R<sup>33</sup>, R<sup>34</sup> and R<sup>35</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

20

- (G) phenyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said phenyl group are optionally and independently replaced with:
- (i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (ii) -COOH,

- (iii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,
- (iv)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,
- (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{36}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{36}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- 5 (vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{37}\text{R}^{38}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- 10 (vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{39}\text{R}^{40}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein
- 15 one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (viii) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{41}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 20 (ix) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{42}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (x)  $-\text{CN}$ , or
- (xi) an amidino group of the formula



25 wherein  $\text{R}^{43}$ ,  $\text{R}^{44}$  and  $\text{R}^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{43}$ ,  $\text{R}^{44}$  and  $\text{R}^{45}$  may

additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

- 5 (H) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein  $R^{46}$  and  $R^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen, or  $R^{100b}$ , wherein  $R^{100b}$  is as hereinbefore defined,
- 10 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 15 (i) oxo,
- (ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{110}$  (wherein  $R^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- 20 (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $-OH$ ,  $-OR^{111}$  (wherein  $R^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $-NH_2$ ,  $-NHMe$  or  $-NMe_2$ ,
- (d)  $-CONR^{102}R^{103}$ , wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $R^{102}$  and  $R^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , or  $-NMe-$ , or
- 25 (e)  $-COOR^{104}$ , wherein  $R^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- 30

(iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-\text{OR}^{112}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,

or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,

(iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,

(v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:

- (a) oxo,
- (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
- (c)  $-\text{OR}^{113}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d)  $-\text{OCOCH}_3$ ,
- (e)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
- (f)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
- (g)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
- (h)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , and
- (i)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{114}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,



(vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:

- 5 (a) -OH,
- (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -NHMe,
- (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- 10 (f) -NHCOMe,
- (g) oxo,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i) -CN,
- (j) the halogen atoms,
- 15 (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, piperaziny, morpholiny, thiomorpholiny, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyrany, tetrahydrofurany, benzodioxoly, tetrahydrothiopheny and sulfolany, and
- 20 (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furany, benzo[b]thiophenyl,
- 25 indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, puriny, quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny, pteridiny and quinazoliny,
- (vii) -SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>108</sup>, wherein R<sup>108</sup> is:
  - 30 (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl,

- isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizynyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinolizynyl, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazolynyl, imidazolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidinyl, azepinyl, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolizynyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl,

- benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl, quinoliziny, cinnolinyl, pthalaninyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, pteridinyl and quinazolinyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of imidazoliny, imidazolidiny, pyrroliny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiazolidiny, azepiny, tetrahydropyranyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, tetrahydrothiophenyl and sulfolanyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, naphthyl, indolyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrroly, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, triazinyl, indolyzinyl, isoindolyl, benzo[b]furanyl, benzo[b]thiophenyl, indazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, purinyl,

quinoliziny, cinnoliny, pthalaniny, quinoxaliny, naphthyridiny,  
pteridiny and quinazoliny,

(J) the halogen atoms, and

(K) -CN;

5 X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

R<sup>55</sup> is:

10 aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, pyridyl,  
and pyrimidinyl, wherein one or more of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or  
heteroaryl group is optionally and independently replaced with:

(A) R<sup>59b</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of  
phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, and  
thiazolyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl  
15 group is optionally replaced with:

(i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl  
of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is  
optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,

(ii) -CN,

20 (iii) nitro, or

(iv) halogen,

(B) methyl, which is optionally trisubstituted with fluorine atoms or is  
optionally monosubstituted with R<sup>59b</sup>,

25 (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to  
6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally  
monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,

(D) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>67</sup>, wherein R<sup>67</sup> is straight or branched  
alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms or  $\text{R}^{59b}$ ,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, 5  
 , fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or  $\text{R}^{59b}$ ,
- (G)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (H) nitro, or
- (I) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl;

10 Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

$\text{R}^7$  is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15 4. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

$\text{A}^1$  is  $=\text{N}-$ ;

$\text{A}^2$  is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ;

D is  $=\text{C}(\text{R}^1)-$ ,  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ,  $=\text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^1)-$ ,  $=\text{C}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{H})-$  or  $=\text{C}(\text{COR}^1)-$ , wherein  $\text{R}^1$  is selected from the class consisting of:

20 (A)  $-\text{R}^{100c}$ , which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

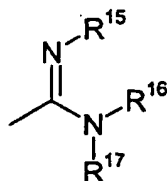
25 (i) oxo,

(ii) phenyl, wherein one hydrogen atom of said phenyl group is optionally replaced with:

(a) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(b)  $-\text{COOH}$ ,

- (c)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,
- (d)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,
- (e) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^8$ , wherein  $\text{R}^8$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (f) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^9\text{R}^{10}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^9$  and  $\text{R}^{10}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^9$  and  $\text{R}^{10}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- (g) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{11}\text{R}^{12}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{11}$  and  $\text{R}^{12}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (h) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{13}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{13}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (i) a group of the formula  $-\text{SR}^{14}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{14}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (j)  $-\text{CN}$ , or
- (k) an amidino group of the formula



wherein  $\text{R}^{15}$ ,  $\text{R}^{16}$  and  $\text{R}^{17}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen

atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms and wherein two of R<sup>15</sup>, R<sup>16</sup> and R<sup>17</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

5 (l) a group of the formula -NHCONHalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(m) a group of the formula -NHCOOalkyl, wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

10 (iii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(iv) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

15 (v) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

20 (vi) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each, independently,

25 (a) a hydrogen atom,

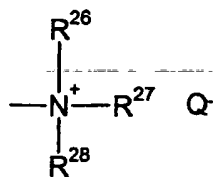
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of

30

-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

- (c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,  
(d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or  
(e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
atoms,

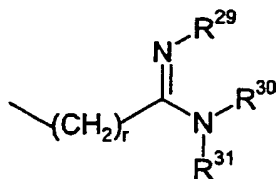
(vii) a quaternary group of the formula



wherein R<sup>26</sup>, R<sup>27</sup> and R<sup>28</sup> are each, independently, a branched or  
unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and Q<sup>-</sup> is a  
pharmaceutically acceptable, or

(viii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(E) amidino groups of the formula

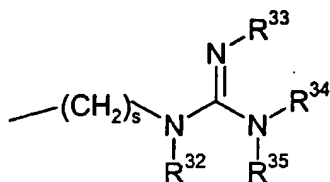


wherein r is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are each, independently, a  
hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup>  
and R<sup>31</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5



carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



5 wherein s is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

10 (G) phenyl, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said phenyl group are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,

(ii)  $-\text{COOH}$ ,

(iii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{OH}$ ,

15 (iv)  $-\text{PO}(\text{OH})_2$ ,

(v) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{36}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{36}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,

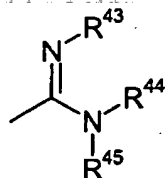
(vi) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{37}\text{R}^{38}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{37}$  and  $\text{R}^{38}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring,

20 (vii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{39}\text{R}^{40}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{39}$  and  $\text{R}^{40}$  constitute a

25

saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

- 5 (viii) a group of the formula  $-OR^{41}$ , wherein  $R^{41}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (ix) a group of the formula  $-SR^{42}$ , wherein  $R^{42}$  is a hydrogen atom, or an alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (x) -CN, or
- 10 (xi) an amidino group of the formula



- wherein  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $R^{43}$ ,  $R^{44}$  and  $R^{45}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,
- 15

- (H) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein  $R^{46}$  and  $R^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or  $R^{100c}$ , wherein  $R^{100c}$  is as hereinbefore defined,
- 20 (I) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 25 (i) oxo,
- (ii)  $-OR^{101}$ , wherein  $R^{101}$  is:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,

- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -CONR<sup>102</sup>R<sup>103</sup>, wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-, or
- (e) -COOR<sup>104</sup>, wherein R<sup>104</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- (iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with -OR<sup>112</sup>, wherein R<sup>112</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,

- 5 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
  - (b) -OH,
  - (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
  - 10 (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (f) -NHMe,
  - (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
  - (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or  
15 cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 20 (a) -OH,
  - (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (d) -NHMe,
  - (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - 25 (f) -NHCOMe,
  - (g) oxo,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i) -CN,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,

- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- 5 (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the
- 10 class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and
- 15 thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl
- 20 moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{119}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{119}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- 25 (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the
- 30 class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of

1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

(c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(ix) -CHO,

(x) the halogen atoms, and

(xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl and imidazolyl,

(J) the halogen atoms, and

(K) -CN;

X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

R<sup>55</sup> is:

phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:

(A) R<sup>59c</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) -CN,
- (iii) nitro, or
- (iv) halogen,
- (B) methyl,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (D) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{67}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, or fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (G) -CN,
- (H) nitro, or
- (I) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl;

Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

$\text{R}^7$  is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

$\text{A}^1$  is  $=\text{N}-$ ;

$\text{A}^2$  is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ;

D is =C(H)-, =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)- or =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100d</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

(i) oxo,

(ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(iii) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

(iv) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

(v) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,

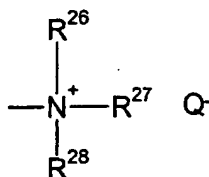
(b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of



-OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
-NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

- (c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,  
(d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and  
wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or  
(e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2,  
and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon  
atoms,

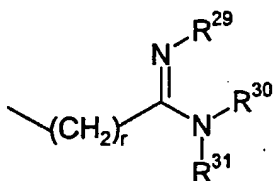
(vi) a quaternary group of the formula



wherein R<sup>26</sup>, R<sup>27</sup> and R<sup>28</sup> are each, independently, a branched or  
unbranched alkyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms and Q<sup>-</sup> is a  
pharmaceutically acceptable counter ion, or

(vii) a cycloalkyl group of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,

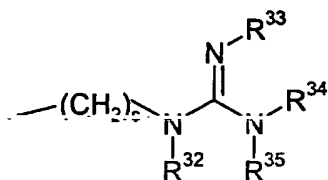
- (B) branched or unbranched carboxylic acid groups of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(C) branched or unbranched phosphonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(D) branched or unbranched sulfonic acid groups of 2 to 6 carbon atoms,  
(E) amidino groups of the formula



wherein r is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup> and R<sup>31</sup> are each, independently, a  
hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of R<sup>29</sup>, R<sup>30</sup>  
and R<sup>31</sup> may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5

carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(F) guanidino groups of the formula



wherein  $s$  is 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6, and  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, and wherein two of  $\text{R}^{32}$ ,  $\text{R}^{33}$ ,  $\text{R}^{34}$  and  $\text{R}^{35}$  may additionally constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom(s) between them form a heterocyclic ring,

(G) groups of the formula  $\text{---NR}^{46}\text{R}^{47}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{46}$  and  $\text{R}^{47}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or  $\text{R}^{100d}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{100d}$  is as hereinbefore defined,

(H) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

(i) oxo,

(ii)  $\text{---OR}^{101}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{101}$  is:

- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with  $\text{---OH}$ ,  $\text{---OR}^{110}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{110}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $\text{---NH}_2$ ,  $\text{---NHMe}$  or  $\text{---NMe}_2$ ,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with  $\text{---OH}$ ,  $\text{---OR}^{111}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{111}$  is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  $\text{---NH}_2$ ,  $\text{---NHMe}$  or  $\text{---NMe}_2$ ,

- (d)  $-\text{CONR}^{102}\text{R}^{103}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,  
or
- (e)  $-\text{COOR}^{104}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- (iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- (c) benzoyl,
- (d) benzyl or
- (e) phenyl, wherein said phenyl ring is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with  $-\text{OR}^{112}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{112}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
- (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,

- 5
- (c)  $-OR^{113}$ , wherein  $R^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d)  $-OCOCH_3$ ,
  - (e)  $-NH_2$ ,
  - (f)  $-NHMe$ ,
  - (g)  $-NMe_2$ ,
  - (h)  $-CO_2H$ , and
  - (i)  $-CO_2 R^{114}$  wherein  $R^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- 10
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 15
- (a)  $-OH$ ,
  - (b)  $-OR^{115}$ , wherein  $R^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (c)  $-NH_2$ ,
  - (d)  $-NHMe$ ,
  - (e)  $-NMe_2$ ,
  - (f)  $-NHCOMe$ ,
  - (g) oxo,
- 20
- (h)  $-CO_2 R^{116}$ , wherein  $R^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i)  $-CN$ ,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,
  - (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- 25
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii)  $-SO_2R^{108}$ , wherein  $R^{108}$  is:
- 30
- (a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the group consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is

optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

5 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6  
10 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

(c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched  
15 alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:

(a) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl and pyrazolyl, wherein said aryl or heteroaryl moiety is  
20 optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

25 (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6  
30 carbon atoms), or

- 5 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (ix) -CHO,
- (x) the halogen atoms, and
- (xi) aryl or heteroaryl which is selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl and imidazolyl, and
- 10 (I) the halogen atoms,
- X is an oxygen atom;
- R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;
- R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,
- 15 R<sup>55</sup> is:
- phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:
- (A) R<sup>59d</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced
- 20 with:
- (i) branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally mono- or polysubstituted with halogen or oxo,
- (ii) -CN,
- 25 (iii) nitro, or
- (iv) halogen,
- (B) methyl,
- (C) branched or unbranched alkyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, which alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally
- 30 monosubstituted with halogen or oxo,

- (D) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{67}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{67}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (E) a group of the formula  $-\text{COR}^{72}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{72}$  is a hydrogen atom, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 5 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 5 carbon atoms,
- (F) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{73}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{73}$  is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl, or fluoroalkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (G)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (H) nitro, or
- (I) halogen;

$\text{R}^5$  is Cl;

Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

$\text{R}^7$  is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =C(H)-;

D is =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)- or =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

5 (A) -R<sup>100e</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, alkenyl of 2 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl or cycloalkenyl group one or more hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

10 (i) -oxo,

(ii) a group of the formula -COOR<sup>18</sup>, wherein R<sup>18</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,

(iii) a group of the formula -CONR<sup>19</sup>R<sup>20</sup>, wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or

15 cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein R<sup>19</sup> and R<sup>20</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

20 (iv) a group of the formula -OR<sup>21</sup>, wherein R<sup>21</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety contains 1 to 6 carbon atoms),  
25 -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>, or

(v) a group of the formula -NR<sup>23</sup>R<sup>24</sup>, wherein R<sup>23</sup> and R<sup>24</sup> are each, independently,

(a) a hydrogen atom,



- 5 (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms, wherein said one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or acyl group are optionally replaced with a group independently selected from the class consisting of -OH, -Oalkyl (wherein the alkyl moiety is 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe and -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_mCOOH$ , wherein m is 0, 1 or 2,
- (d) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCOOR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or
- 10 (e) a group of the formula  $-(CH_2)_nCONHR^{25}$ , wherein n is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein R<sup>25</sup> is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (B) groups of the formula  $-NR^{46}R^{47}$ , wherein R<sup>46</sup> and R<sup>47</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom, phenyl which is optionally monosubstituted with halogen, or R<sup>100e</sup>, wherein R<sup>100e</sup> is as hereinbefore defined, and
- 15 (C) saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolinyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or poly-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 20 (i) oxo,
- (ii) -OR<sup>101</sup>, wherein R<sup>101</sup> is:
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- 25 (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein any hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

- 5 (d)  $-\text{CONR}^{102}\text{R}^{103}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{102}$  and  $\text{R}^{103}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ , or
- (e)  $-\text{COOR}^{104}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{104}$  is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- 10 (iii)  $-\text{CONR}^{105}\text{R}^{106}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom, or
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms,
- 15 or, wherein  $\text{R}^{105}$  and  $\text{R}^{106}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (iv)  $-\text{COOR}^{107}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{107}$  is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms,
- 20 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, alkenyl or alkynyl of 2 to 7 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 25 (a) oxo,
- (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
- (c)  $-\text{OR}^{113}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d)  $-\text{OCOCH}_3$ ,
- (e)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
- 30 (f)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,

- (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
  - (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- 5 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or more hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) -OH,
  - 10 (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
  - (d) -NHMe,
  - (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
  - (f) -NHCOMe,
  - 15 (g) oxo,
  - (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i) -CN,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,
  - (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
  - 20 (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii) -SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>108</sup>, wherein R<sup>108</sup> is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the
  - 25 halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>117</sup> (wherein R<sup>117</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
  - (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of
  - 30 pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and

thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>118</sup> (wherein R<sup>118</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>119</sup> (wherein R<sup>119</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),

(viii) -COR<sup>109</sup>, wherein R<sup>109</sup> is:

- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>120</sup> (wherein R<sup>120</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one or more halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or -OR<sup>121</sup> (wherein R<sup>121</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one or more moieties selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and

(ix) -CHO;

X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

R<sup>55</sup> is:

phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:

5 (A) R<sup>59e</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

(i) methyl,  
(ii) -CN,  
10 (iii) nitro, or  
(iv) halogen,

(B) methyl,  
(C) -CN,  
(D) nitro, or  
15 (E) halogen;

R<sup>5</sup> is Cl;

Z is =C(H)-; and,

R<sup>7</sup> is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20

7. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =C(H)-;

25 D is =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)- or =C(C(O)R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

(A) -R<sup>100e</sup>, which is:

branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, in which alkyl, or cycloalkyl group one to three hydrogen atoms are optionally and independently replaced with:

- (i) oxo,
- (ii) a group of the formula  $-\text{COOR}^{18}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{18}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (iii) a group of the formula  $-\text{CONR}^{19}\text{R}^{20}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  are each, independently, a hydrogen atom, alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 6 carbon atoms, or wherein  $\text{R}^{19}$  and  $\text{R}^{20}$  constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  $-\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{NH}-$ , or  $-\text{NMe}-$ ,
- (iv) a group of the formula  $-\text{OR}^{21}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{21}$  is a hydrogen atom, or a straight or branched alkyl or acyl group of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, or
- (v) a group of the formula  $-\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{23}$  and  $\text{R}^{24}$  are each, independently,
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) straight or branched alkyl or acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbon atoms,
- (c) a group of the formula  $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{COOH}$ , wherein  $m$  is 0, 1 or 2,
- (d) a group of the formula  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{COOR}^{25}$ , wherein  $n$  is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $\text{R}^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, or
- (e) a group of the formula  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CONHR}^{25}$ , wherein  $n$  is 0, 1 or 2, and wherein  $\text{R}^{25}$  is straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms, and
- (B) saturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or di-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (i) oxo,
- (ii)  $-\text{OR}^{101}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{101}$  is:

- 5
- (a) a hydrogen atom,
- (b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- 10 (d) -CONR<sup>102</sup>R<sup>103</sup>, wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> are each independently a hydrogen atom or alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, or wherein R<sup>102</sup> and R<sup>103</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-, or
- 15 (e) -COOR<sup>104</sup>, wherein R<sup>104</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms,
- (iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:
- (a) a hydrogen atom, or
- (b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally
- 20 monosubstituted with -OH, -OR<sup>123</sup> (wherein R<sup>123</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe, -NMe<sub>2</sub>, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl or morpholinyl, or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen
- 25 atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by -O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,
- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,

- (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons, wherein one to three hydrogen atoms of said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety independently selected from the class consisting of:
- 5 (a) oxo,
  - (b)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
  - (c)  $-\text{OR}^{113}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{113}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - (d)  $-\text{OCOCH}_3$ ,
  - (e)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
  - 10 (f)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
  - (g)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
  - (h)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , and
  - (i)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{114}$  wherein  $\text{R}^{114}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- 15 (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or two hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally replaced with a moiety selected from the class consisting of:
- (a)  $-\text{OH}$ ,
  - (b)  $-\text{OR}^{115}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{115}$  is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
  - 20 (c)  $-\text{NH}_2$ ,
  - (d)  $-\text{NHMe}$ ,
  - (e)  $-\text{NMe}_2$ ,
  - (f)  $-\text{NHCOMe}$ ,
  - (g) oxo,
  - 25 (h)  $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{116}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{116}$  is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
  - (i)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
  - (j) the halogen atoms,
  - (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholynyl and thiomorpholynyl, and



- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{117}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{117}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or
- (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{119}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{119}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) phenyl, wherein said phenyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{120}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{120}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (b) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, wherein said heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or  $-\text{OR}^{121}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{121}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), or

- 5 (c) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl moiety is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of the halogen atoms, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, and -OR<sup>122</sup> (wherein R<sup>122</sup> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and

(ix) -CHO;

X is an oxygen atom;

R<sup>3</sup> is branched or unbranched alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms;

R<sup>4</sup> is a group of the formula -CH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>55</sup>, wherein,

10 R<sup>55</sup> is:

phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:

(A) R<sup>59e</sup>, which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl and furyl, wherein one of the hydrogen atoms of said aryl or heteroaryl group is optionally replaced with:

15

- (i) methyl,
- (ii) -CN,
- (iii) nitro, or
- (iv) halogen,

20

- (B) methyl,
- (C) -CN,
- (D) nitro, or
- (E) halogen;

R<sup>5</sup> is Cl;

25 Z is =C(H)-; and,

R<sup>7</sup> is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. A compound of the formula I, as set forth in claim 1, wherein:

A<sup>1</sup> is =N-;

A<sup>2</sup> is =C(H)-;

D is =C(SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1</sup>)-, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the class consisting of:

5 (A) methyl, and

(B) saturated heterocyclic groups selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said heterocyclic groups are optionally mono- or di-substituted with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:

10 (i) oxo,

(ii) -OR<sup>101</sup>, wherein R<sup>101</sup> is:

(a) a hydrogen atom,

(b) alkyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said alkyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>110</sup> (wherein R<sup>110</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,  
15 or

(c) acyl of 1 to 7 carbons, wherein one hydrogen atom of said acyl group is optionally replaced with -OH, -OR<sup>111</sup> (wherein R<sup>111</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe or -NMe<sub>2</sub>,

20 (iii) -CONR<sup>105</sup>R<sup>106</sup>, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> are each independently:

(a) a hydrogen atom, or

(b) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 atoms or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 atoms, wherein said alkyl or cycloalkyl group is optionally monosubstituted with -OH, -OR<sup>123</sup> (wherein R<sup>123</sup> is an alkyl moiety of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), -NH<sub>2</sub>, -NHMe, -NMe<sub>2</sub>,  
25 pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl or morpholinyl,  
or, wherein R<sup>105</sup> and R<sup>106</sup> constitute a saturated hydrocarbon bridge of 3 to 5 carbon atoms which together with the nitrogen atom between them form a heterocyclic ring, and wherein one

carbon atom in said hydrocarbon bridge is optionally replaced by  
-O-, -NH-, or -NMe-,

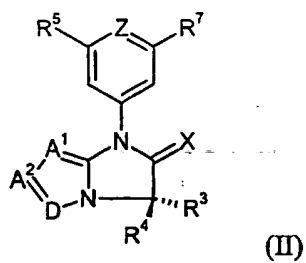
- (iv) -COOR<sup>107</sup>, wherein R<sup>107</sup> is a hydrogen atom, or straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms ,
- 5 (v) straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one or two hydrogen atoms of said alkyl group are optionally replaced with moieties independently selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) oxo,
- (b) -OH,
- 10 (c) -OR<sup>113</sup>, wherein R<sup>113</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (d) -OCOCH<sub>3</sub>,
- (e) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHMe,
- (g) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- 15 (h) -CO<sub>2</sub>H, and
- (i) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>114</sup> wherein R<sup>114</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms, or cycloalkyl of 3 to 7 carbons,
- (vi) acyl of 1 to 7 carbon atoms, which may be straight, branched or cyclic, and wherein one or two hydrogen atoms of said acyl group is optionally
- 20 replaced with a moiety selected from the class consisting of:
- (a) -OH,
- (b) -OR<sup>115</sup>, wherein R<sup>115</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms,
- (c) -NH<sub>2</sub>,
- (d) -NHMe,
- 25 (e) -NMe<sub>2</sub>,
- (f) -NHCOMe,
- (g) oxo,
- (h) -CO<sub>2</sub> R<sup>116</sup>, wherein R<sup>116</sup> is alkyl of 1 to 3 carbon atoms,
- (i) -CN,
- 30 (j) the halogen atoms,

- (k) heterocycles selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, morpholinyl and thiomorpholinyl, and
- (l) aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of phenyl, thiophenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, furyl, pyrrolyl and oxazolyl,
- 5 (vii)  $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}^{108}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{108}$  is:
- (a) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said heterocyclic group is optionally substituted with one moiety selected from the class consisting of straight or branched alkyl of 1
- 10 to 6 carbons, and  $-\text{OR}^{118}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{118}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms),
- (viii)  $-\text{COR}^{109}$ , wherein  $\text{R}^{109}$  is:
- (a) a heterocyclic group selected from the class consisting of pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl and morpholinyl wherein said
- 15 heterocyclyl is optionally substituted with one halogen, straight or branched alkyl of 1 to 6 carbons, or  $-\text{OR}^{121}$  (wherein  $\text{R}^{121}$  is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to 6 carbon atoms), and
- (ix)  $-\text{CHO}$ ;
- X is an oxygen atom;
- 20  $\text{R}^3$  is methyl;
- $\text{R}^4$  is a group of the formula  $-\text{CH}_2\text{R}^{55}$ , wherein,
- $\text{R}^{55}$  is:
- phenyl, which is optionally substituted at the 4-position with:
- (A)  $\text{R}^{59e}$ , which is aryl or heteroaryl selected from the class consisting of
- 25 phenyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidinyl
- (B)  $-\text{CN}$ ,
- (B) nitro, or
- (C) halogen;
- $\text{R}^5$  is Cl;
- 30 Z is  $=\text{C}(\text{H})-$ ; and,

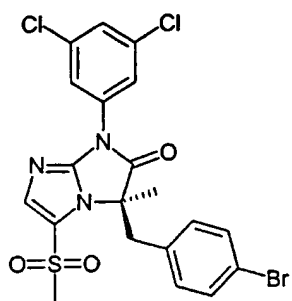
$R^7$  is Cl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

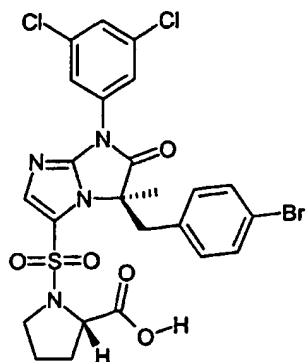
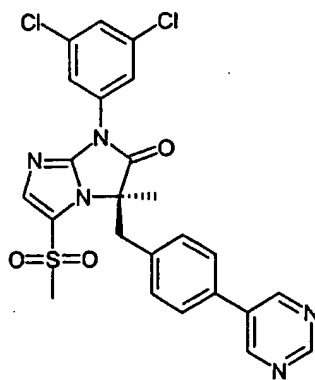
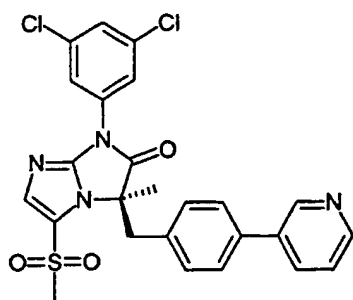
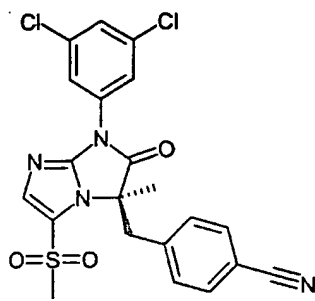
9. A compound of the formula I, in accordance with claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8, with the absolute stereochemistry depicted below in formula II (below).



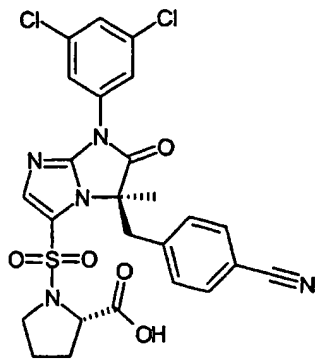
10. A compound of the formula I, in accordance with claim 1, selected from the group consisting of:

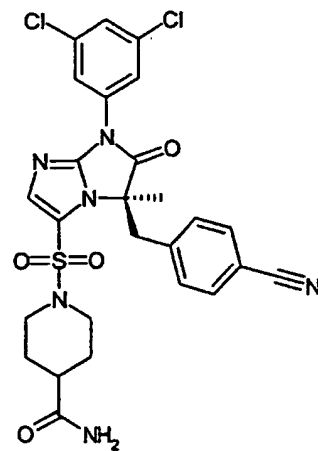
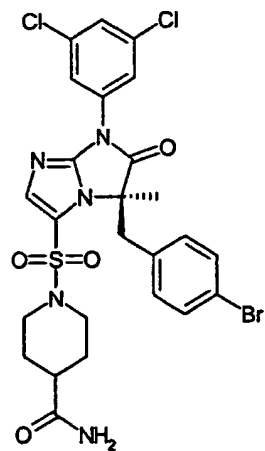
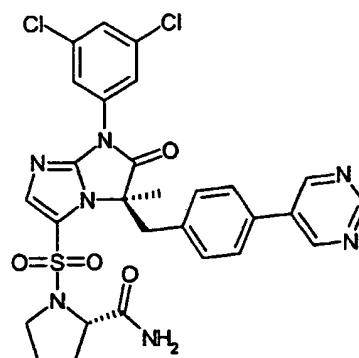
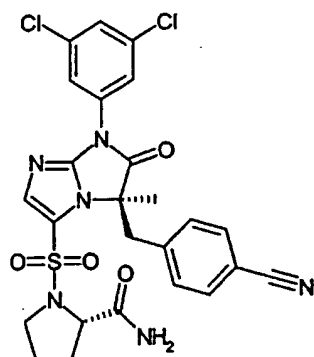
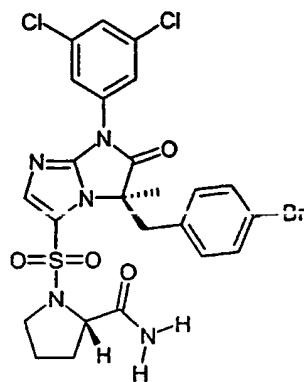
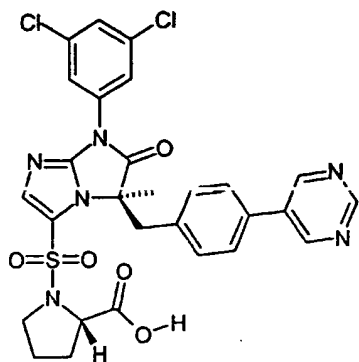


5



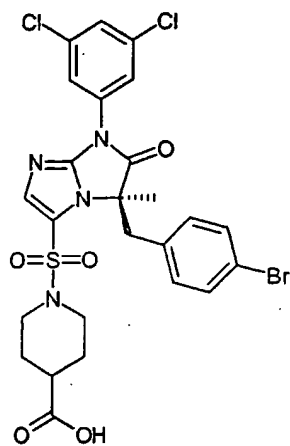
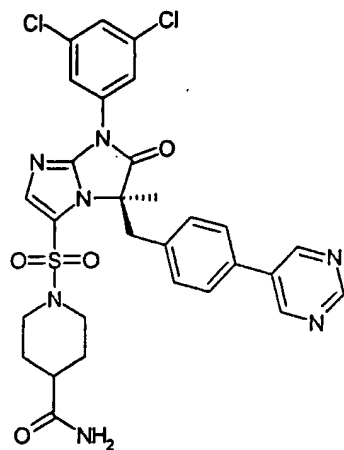
10



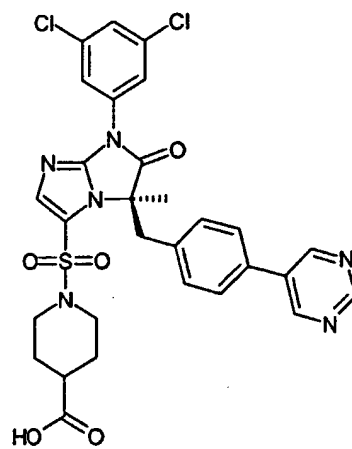
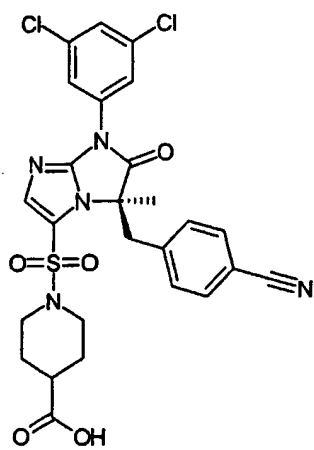


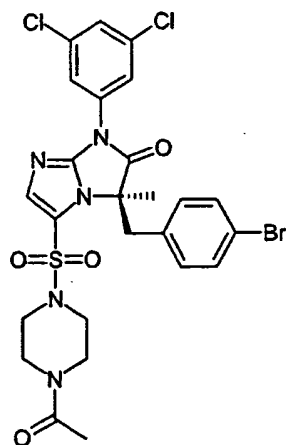
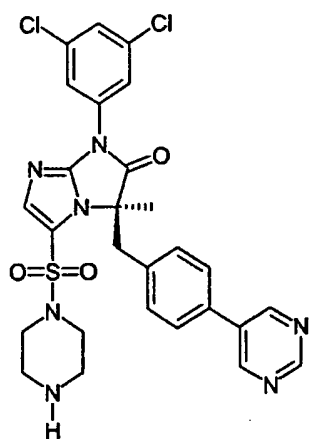
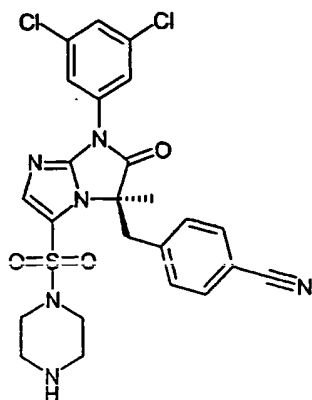
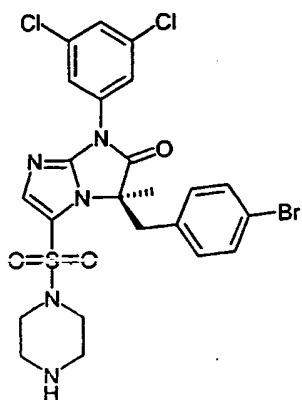
5



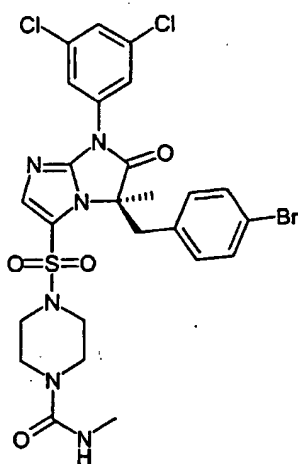
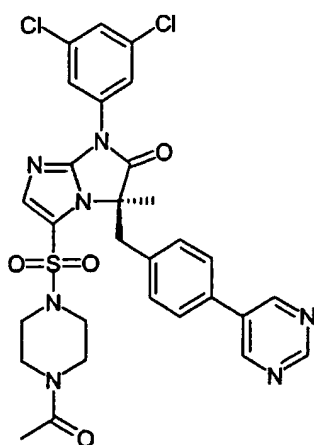
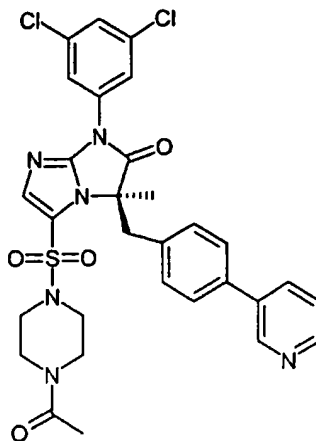
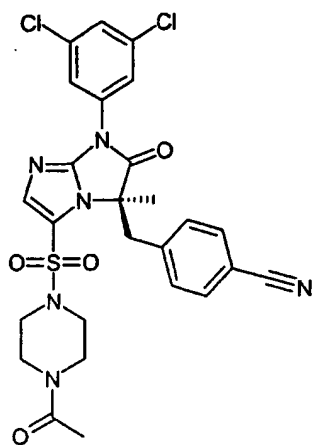


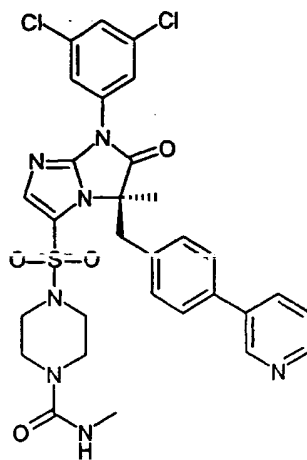
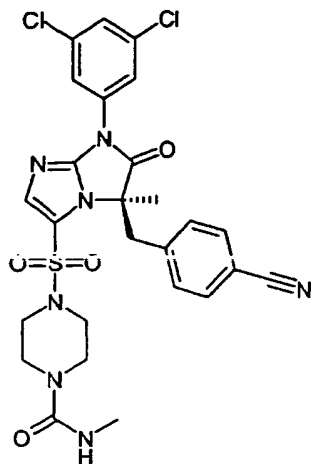
5



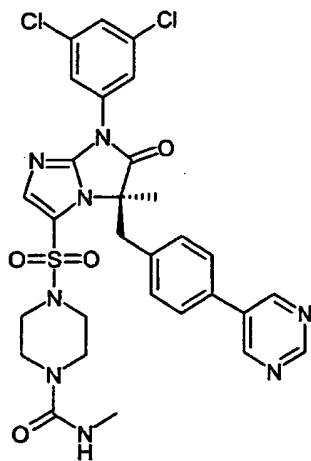


5





, and



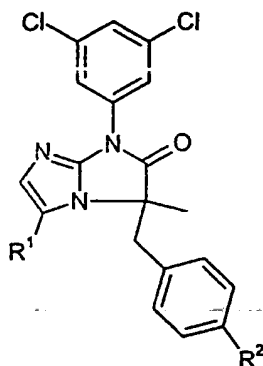
5

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11. A method for the treatment or prophylaxis of inflammatory or immune cell-mediated diseases which comprises administering to a host in need of such treatment or prophylaxis a therapeutic or prophylactic amount of a compound in accordance with claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 or 10.

12. The method of claim 11 wherein the disease or condition is selected from the group consisting of adult respiratory distress syndrome, shock, oxygen toxicity, multiple organ injury syndrome secondary to septicemia, multiple organ injury syndrome secondary to  
5 trauma, reperfusion injury of tissue due to cardiopulmonary bypass, myocardial infarction or use with thrombolysis agents, acute glomerulonephritis, vasculitis, reactive arthritis, dermatosis with acute inflammatory components, stroke, thermal injury, hemodialysis, leukapheresis, ulcerative colitis, necrotizing enterocolitis and granulocyte transfusion associated syndrome.
- 10
13. The method of claim 11 wherein the disease or condition is selected from the group consisting of psoriasis, organ/tissue transplant rejection, graft vs. host reactions and autoimmune diseases including Raynaud's syndrome, autoimmune thyroiditis, dermatitis,  
15 multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, uveitis, inflammatory bowel disease including Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis; and systemic lupus erythematosus.
- 20
14. The method of claim 11 wherein the disease or condition is asthma.
15. The method of claim 11 wherein the condition is toxicity associated with cytokine  
25 therapy.
16. The method of claim 11 wherein the disease or condition is psoriasis.
- 30
17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound in accordance with claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 or 10.

18. A compound of the formula



wherein,

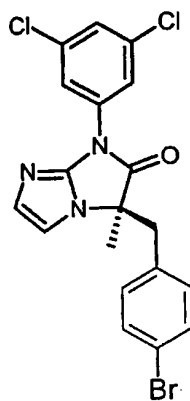
R¹ is selected from the class consisting of:

- (A) hydrogen,
- (B) the halogen atoms, and
- (C) SO<sub>2</sub>M<sup>+</sup>, wherein M<sup>+</sup> is
  - (i) Li<sup>+</sup>,
  - (ii) Na<sup>+</sup>,
  - (iii) K<sup>+</sup>, or
  - (iv) MgX<sup>+</sup>, wherein X is a halogen; and

R² is selected from the class consisting of:

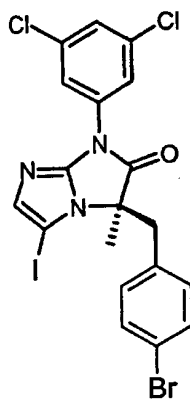
- (A) the halogen atoms,
- (B) aryl, selected from the class of
  - (i) phenyl,
  - (ii) pyridyl, and
  - (iii) pyrimidyl, and
- (C) CN.

19. In accordance with claim 18, the compound of the following formula:



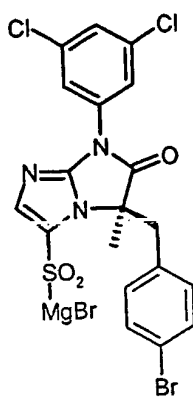
1

- 5 20. In accordance with claim 18, the compound of the following formula:



2

21. In accordance with claim 18, the compound of the following formula:



5



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 00/18884

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07D487/04 C07F9/40 C07D519/00 C07F9/38 A61K31/41  
A61K31/415 A61P29/00 //(C07D487/04,233:00),(C07D487/04,  
233:00,249:00),(C07D487/04,233:00,257:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07D C07F A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 98 39303 A (BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM PHARMACEUTICALS, INC.) 11 September 1998 (1998-09-11) cited in the application claims 1-17	1-21
A	PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 010, no. 120, 6 May 1986 (1986-05-06) & JP 60 246374 A (MITSUI PHARMACEUT. INC.), 6 December 1985 (1985-12-06) abstract	1-21

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

17 October 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

06/11/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Herz, C

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inter      nal Application No  
PCT/US 00/18884

## C. (Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	E. E. SCHWEITZER, K.-J. LEE: "Novel LiAlH(4) Reduction Pathway. Reactions of 2,3-Dihydro-1H-imidazo'1,2-b!pyrazol-2-one s with LiAlH(4). Preparations of 2,3-Dihydro-1H-imidazo'1,2-b!pyrazoles and Side Products" J. ORG. CHEM., vol. 49, no. 25, 1984, pages 4848-4853, XP000942433 tables I,,VI	1-21
A	E. E. SCHWEITZER, K.-J. LEE: "Reactions of Azines. 8. Rearrangement of 1-Oxo-3,4,8-triaza-2,4,6,7-octatetraenes to 2,3-Dihydro-1H-imidazo'1,2-b!pyrazol-2-one s and 4,9-Dihydropyrazolo'5,1-b!quinazolines" J. ORG. CHEM., vol. 49, no. 11, 1984, pages 1964-1969, XP000942400 table I	1-21
A	A. L. RHEINGOLD ET AL.: "The Structures of 3-Allyl-9-benzoyl-2-methyl-9-phenyl-4,9-dihydropyrazolo'5,1-b!quinazoline, C <sub>27</sub> H <sub>23</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O, and 6,7-Dimethyl-1,3,3-triphenyl-1H-imidazo'1,2-b!pyrazol-2(3H)-one, C <sub>25</sub> H <sub>21</sub> N <sub>3</sub> O" ACTA CRYSTALLOGR., SECT. C: CRYST. STRUCT. COMMUN., vol. c40, no. 4, 1984, pages 687-690, XP000942401 * Compounds of formula 3 *	1-21
A	E. E. SCHWEITZER ET AL.: "Reactions of Azines. 12. Preparation and Reactions of Triphenyl'2-((phenyl(methoxycarbonyl)methylene)hydrazono)propyl!phosphonium Bromide" J. ORG. CHEM., vol. 52, no. 9, 1987, pages 1810-1816, XP000942399 * Compounds of formula 27 *	1-21

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/18884

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9839303 A	11-09-1998	AU 6541898 A	22-09-1998
		CN 1249748 T	05-04-2000
		EP 0966447 A	29-12-1999
		NO 994256 A	02-11-1999
		PL 336580 A	03-07-2000
JP 60246374 A	06-12-1985	JP 1806417 C	10-12-1993
		JP 5010344 B	09-02-1993

**THIS PAGE BLANK. (USPTO)**